



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

TX 973.5 .B974
Burton, Alma Holman.
Builders of our nation /

Stanford University Libraries



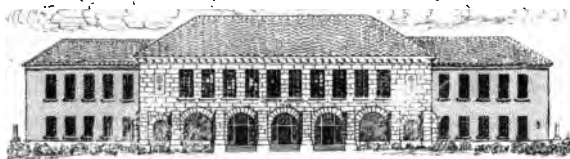
3 6105 04935 1369

SERIES

BUILDERS, OF OUR NATION



EATON & COMPANY
PUBLISHERS
CHICAGO



SCHOOL OF EDUCATION
LIBRARY

TEXTBOOK COLLECTION
GIFT OF
THE PUBLISHERS



STANFORD UNIVERSITY
LIBRARIES

DEPARTMENT OF
EDUCATION

957511170

FEB 14 1912

LELAND STANFORD
JUNIOR UNIVERSITY.

THE EATON SERIES

BUILDERS OF OUR NATION

By

ALMA HOLMAN BURTON

*Author of the Eaton United States History
and other historical works*



610009

C

Copyright, 1905

Copyright, 1910

EATON & COMPANY

Manufactured by

BROCK & RANKIN

CHICAGO

PREFACE

History as a subject for study should appeal with special force to children. The degree of interest, with which it makes its appeal, depends largely upon whether the child's introduction to the subject attracts or repels.

It is the author's desire, therefore, to trace the evolution of our nation, with its English speech and English traditions, so simply that the recital may be comprehended quite as clearly by a child ten or twelve years old as by his elders. And why not teach even beginners that "the roots of the present lie deep in the past;" that before America might become a factor in human progress, the dormant energies of northern Europe, as yet without trade or manufactories, must be awakened; that the great possibilities of eastern commerce must be opened to the wistful gaze of the Atlantic seamen, whose profits had been in scanty catches of fish; that the spirit of rivalry for riches and rule must be roused in imperial breasts?

In other words, is it not well that the young readers should become acquainted with the subtle forces that prepared the way for a Columbus and learn of the conditions that sent to our shores the hardy pioneers who laid the foundation for our sturdy American manhood?

With this query in view the author has chosen for the initial chapters, periods antedating that fateful Friday morning, August 3, 1492, when the prows of three Spanish ships were set toward the west.

The biographical method has been adopted because immature minds are especially susceptible to the charm of personal endeavor. In each of the eighteen biographies the hero chosen is closely identified with the upward and onward tendency of the period in which he lived. The man and the nation are as closely associated as possible in the hope that the interest attaching to the one may compensate for any lack of interest in the other.

Geography and chronology, the "two eyes of history," which so often stare the young reader out of countenance, are in most cases relegated to the margins of the book; yet the dates are so profuse and the maps are in such close relation to the immediate text that the child will gain a much clearer conception of both time and place than would be possible if the citations were continually interrupting the narration.

The "Builders of Our Nation," though reasonably complete in itself, is intended as a preparatory study for the "Eaton History of the United States." The beginner's book therefore dwells somewhat at length upon the periods of discovery and colonization. These periods are less fully treated in the more advanced work in order that more space may be given to the subsequent periods of nationality and progress.

To the tactful, earnest teachers of our public schools this little book is intrusted with the hope that every child who reads its pages may be lured on and on through more intricate paths to a broad view of the History-making Present where he may one day play his part.

PREFACE



Grateful acknowledgments for helpful suggestions as to the text of this book are especially due to O. T. Bright, of Chicago, Illinois, F. W. Nichols, of Evanston, Illinois, and Miss Cora Hamilton and S. B. Hursh of the State Normal School, Macomb, Illinois.

ALMA HOLMAN BURTON.

CONTENTS

	PAGE
I. HIAWATHA	I
II. MARCO POLO	14
III. PRINCE HENRY, THE NAVIGATOR	23
IV. CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS	29
V. FERNANDO DE SOTO	46
VI. SIR FRANCIS DRAKE	61
VII. JOHN SMITH	74
VIII. MILES STANDISH	88
IX. PETER STUYVESANT	104
X. LA SALLE	115
XI. WILLIAM PENN	129
XII. WILLIAM PITT	141
XIII. GEORGE WASHINGTON	155
XIV. ANDREW JACKSON	178
XV. DANIEL WEBSTER	195
XVI. ABRAHAM LINCOLN	211
XVII. SAMUEL FINLEY BREESE MORSE	224
XVIII. WILLIAM MCKINLEY	236

MOST IMPORTANT MAPS

	PAGE
INDIAN TRIBES OF NORTH AND SOUTH AMERICA . . .	6
MARCO POLO'S TRAVELS	20
VOYAGES OF COLUMBUS	38
DE SOTO'S TRAVELS IN AMERICA	58
BRITISH ISLES	62
NETHERLANDS	90
BRITISH POSSESSIONS IN AMERICA. 1764	150
UNITED STATES IN 1788	174
UNITED STATES IN 1800	182
TERRITORIAL GROWTH OF U. S.	186
UNITED STATES IN 1830	190
UNITED STATES IN 1850	210
UNITED STATES IN 1860	218
UNITED STATES IN 1905	240
CUBA	241
HAWAII	244
PHILIPPINES	245
PORTO RICO	246
WORLD IN 1899	248
PANAMA CANAL ROUTE	249



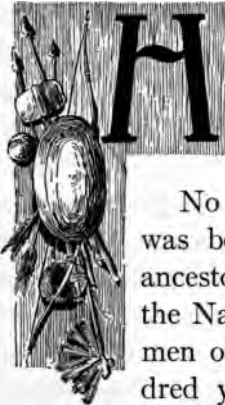
THE LANDING OF COLUMBUS

DEPARTMENT OF
EDUCATION
19021720

FEB 14 1912

HIAWATHA
THE INDIAN PROPHECY

LELAND STANFORD
JUNIOR UNIVERSITY.



HIAWATHA was the son of the West Wind, so the poet tells us, and his young mother died when he was so small he could not remember her face.

No one really knows when Hiawatha was born. But if he ever *was* born his ancestors were certainly living when Henry the Navigator's pilots first saw the black men of Africa; yes, and more than a hundred years before that, when Marco Polo first saw the yellow men of Asia. And ages before *that* his race, whose skin was reddish-brown, had been wandering over the vast continents of North and South America, which the white people of Europe knew nothing about.

Hiawatha belonged to the Iroquois tribe, who dwelt in what is now central New York, and along the St. Lawrence, and the lower lakes.¹

His grandmother, old Nokomis, taught him to know the forest as the white boy knows his book. Even while he was a papoose, bound to the branch of a tree in a linden cradle, old Nokomis crooned up to him tales of the woodlands, and the marshes, and the river that ran so swiftly past the wigwam.

The birth of
Hiawatha

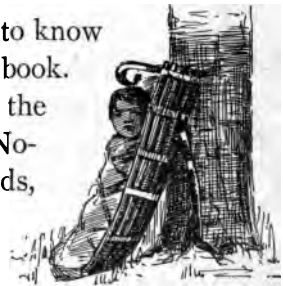
1434

Henry the Navigator
sailors find African
negroes

1272

Marco Polo sees the
Chinese

The Iroquois



A PAPOOSE

¹ See map, page 6.

Hiawatha's
Education

At evening when the fire-flies fluttered, she called up to him that they were setting candles in the pine trees to light him to bed; when the slow moon rose above the hill-top, she said the watchman was coming to guard him from harm all the night. If a hooting broke the silence and he lisped out shrilly: "What is that, Nokomis?" she soothed him, gently saying it was the owl and the owlets talking in their native language.



BEAVERS

Day after day he lay there in the branches. He learned all the noises of the forest. As soon as he could toddle off among the tree trunks he found where the squirrels hid their acorns, and how the beavers built their lodges, and what made the rabbits seem so timid.

Hiawatha lived alone with old Nokomis, but the woods were full of friends. He could answer the calls of the birds, and the growls of the bear, and the howls of the wolf, and the croaks of the frog, and the high, sharp neighs of the red deer. He glided like the weasel, he ran like the bison, he raised himself high like the bear when it strikes with its paw. And these creatures soon began to know him and to love him.



BOW AND ARROW

When Hiawatha learned to make his bow of ash wood and his oaken arrows, he shot so fast and so far that if he sent ten arrows upward, the last one left the bowstring before the first had fallen. Yet, swiftly as he sent his arrows, he could shoot straight out before him and spring forward with such fleetness that the arrow would fall behind him.

When he learned to build a boat of birch bark—with

the larch-tree roots to bind it, and the fir-tree sap to glue it, and the quills of the porcupine stained with the juice of berries for a border—he glided up and down the river, sometimes seated, sometimes standing, trailing strings of fish behind him. A crumpled rose leaf in the current, or a twisted twig that hung above the water, often told him a long, long story.



INDIAN CANOE

So Hiawatha really read the forest as the white boy reads his book.

After a time he wandered from Nokomis to mingle with the chiefs of his clan. Through the Moon of Leaves and the Moon of Strawberries¹ he dwelt in the Iroquois tents. The Iroquois tribe was divided into five great nations. Sometimes these nations quarreled with one another, but they spoke the same language and usually went together on the warpath against hostile tribes.

Hiawatha joins his people

Iroquois who were related formed clans—sisters and brothers, aunts, uncles, cousins, nieces, nephews, grandmothers, grandfathers, great grandmothers, great grandfathers; and second and third cousins counted too. Families in the clan, or as many as could do so, lived together in one “long house,” built of wood and covered over with elm bark. The house was divided into rooms. Each family occupied one room. Four rooms had one fire-pit, where four families cooked their food. If I told you Hiawatha visited in a house with “five

The long house

¹ The months of May and June.

fires," you would surely know that he was an Iroquois, and that the "long house" had twenty families in it. Over each house stood the totem pole of the clan. The totem pole was a kind of coat of arms with an animal for its symbol—a wolf, a bear, a tortoise, a beaver, or a red deer.



INDIAN TOTEM POLE

The Dakotahs

In pleasant weather the warriors did not stay long in the houses. They sped down the rivers fishing or plunged deep into the forest after game, and Hiawatha was always with them. When the stars came out they lighted a fire of leaves and twigs, with flint stones, and sat around it in a circle. Then Hiawatha asked them many questions. The warriors told him that between the Rocky Mountains and the Mississippi River lived the Dakotahs,¹ who dwelt in skin tents and moved from place to place to hunt and fish. East of the great Father of Waters,² and south of the Tennessee lived the

The Mobilians



INDIAN TENT

Mobilians,¹ a confederacy of many nations—the Chickasaws, who were cunning thieves; the Choctaws, who pressed their papooses' heads quite flat; the Creeks and Seminoles, far down on a gulf of the salt sea, who wove cloth from buffalo wool and wild hemp, and made pots from clay, and had nets called "hammocks" for beds, which they hung between two posts.

Hiawatha asked the warriors how the Creeks and Seminoles had learned to make the pots of clay and

¹ See map, p. 6.² The meaning of "Mississippi."

cloth of wool and wild hemp; but they merely shook their heads for answer. What need had men of such things? There were skins in plenty for the winter, and gourds and deer horns for the water!

"Umph! Umph!" then went around the circle.

They told him about his neighbors, the Algonquins, who did not bother about pot-making. The hunting grounds of the Algonquins stretched from the Atlantic salt sea to the Mississippi. The Algonquins went on the warpath whenever they could. Sometimes they put on paint and feathers to go to Kentucky, "The Dark and Bloody Ground." All nations hunted in Kentucky, but no nation dared to dwell there; for the warriors always brought back many scalp-locks.

The Algonquins

Some of Hiawatha's kinsmen showed long scalp-locks they had taken in Kentucky. This was Creek, and that was Choctaw, these were Seminoles, and one, with feathers still stuck in it, was from a big Algonquin chieftain.

The Algonquins lived in wigwams made of bark. They painted their naked bodies, and they shaved their hair except the scalp-lock, which they trimmed and decked with feathers like a banner, and which they dared their foes to come and capture.

These things and many others Hiawatha heard about his neighbors as he sat around the camp-fires. Then he went back to his wigwam; but he kept thinking over what the chiefs had told him.

Among the kinsmen that came to see Nokomis was Iagoo, famous as a story-teller. Often when the air was white with moonlight, Iagoo sat alone with Hia



INDIAN WARRIOR



INDIAN TRIBES OF NORTH AND SOUTH AMERICA

watha. Once he told of tribes far to the south and bordering on a great salt water.¹ These people, said Iagoo, built stone houses, with straight stone pillars like the tree trunks, carved all over with strange totems. Some of the houses were temples, where priests in long robes made sacrifices upon an altar to their god, the Sun. These houses set together made great cities. There were many cities in the southlands, said Iagoo; but Mexico, on the shores of a lake, was the greatest, with straight broad stone paths that led to other cities. Mexico

Between the cities were fields of maize, and cane with sweet sap like the maple. There were shrubs that bore berries which were brewed for drink. There were plants that had tufts of white down like the thistles, from which the squaws made cloth, which they dyed in colors made from roots and barks.

Thousands and thousands of slaves, taken in battle, worked deep in the sides of the mountains to get metals—one yellow as the buttercups and another pale as moonbeams—which cunning artisans fashioned into necklaces and rings and wristlets.

The men of the southlands lined the walls of their temples with these metals and built their altars of them and stored the rest away in heaps in public buildings. Mexican temples

The people who lived in Mexico were called the Aztecs. Their king, the montezuma, was a mighty warrior. He had bows and arrows that numbered like the stars to be ready if enemies came to his kingdom. When one montezuma died his oldest son or oldest brother mounted the throne, which shone like the sun.

¹ See map, p. 6.

It was a wonderful story Iagoo was telling! Hiawatha did not hear the owl that hooted from a nearby fir tree.

When a silence fell upon the night air he asked in a half whisper where these people learned to build stone houses, lay stone paths, dig metals, weave cloth, and plant fine gardens of fruits and flowers.

Iagoo, the great traveler and boaster, looked very wise as he sat there in the moonlight. He kept silent for a moment. Then he said it was tradition that ages and ages ago a child of the Sun, with skin like the snow and hair like the buttercups and eyes blue as the lake, had come to earth to teach these people in the southlands.

"And what became of the white man?" whispered Hiawatha.

"He lived with them many, many summers," said Iagoo. "When they needed him no longer he called them all together. He told them he was going to the great Hereafter, but some day another prophet would come down among them with a white face like his own."

"Esa, esa, old Iagoo! Shame upon you!" cried Nokomis, when Hiawatha told her the story.

But Hiawatha could not cease his thinking, though he was always very busy. In the Moon of Falling Leaves¹ he joined a fishing expedition. When the snowflakes sifted through the forest he put on snowshoes for a great hunt, and he brought back loads of skins and dried meat.

But he could not cease his thinking, though he made

¹ September.

things ready for the warpath with his people. He helped to build a great fire in the open. He painted his face in stripes of red and yellow, put turkey feathers in his hair, borrowed from Nokomis all her beads and feathers, and tossed the finest bear skin on his shoulders.

He helped to set up a red post. With the other warriors, all in paint and feathers, he marched slowly round the post. Faster and faster went the footsteps. Someone thumped upon a drum of deer skin. Loud and louder rose the chanting, until it changed to war whoops. Hiawatha struck the red post with the others. He kicked it and stabbed it, just as he intended to do to his foes. The great warriors shouted the number of scalps they had taken and the number they intended to take before they came back to their wigwams.

Hiawatha had never cut a scalp-lock. He could only boast how many he too would take when the battle was on.

When dawn broke above the tree-tops he laid aside his war gear and, half naked like the others, hurried to his first real battle.

The way was long. Then came blood-curdling war whoops. The ground shook with the fury of the combat. The trees swam round. The air was black with arrows. The hills hissed back the twang of bow-strings. Hiawatha shot from his quiver all his jasper-headed arrows. He kept rushing onward. He stumbled over bodies streaked with crimson. He beat and bruised about him with his war club. He did not know just what was happening till he saw himself surrounded by his clansmen, who were shouting "Hiawatha! Hiawatha!"



INDIAN WAR
CLUB

He return home

Then he looked and saw a string of bloody scalp-locks dangling from his belt—one, two, three, and up to twenty. No great brave who boasted at the war dance carried half so many scalp-locks. The warriors started home in triumph.

One night they halted in a gully of a mountain. Fire was struck from flint stones, game was cooked, and the warriors slept in rows before the blazing logs—all but Hiawatha who kept thinking. He remembered the hate in his heart when he whirled around the war post; he heard again the hiss of arrows and the tumult of the battle; he felt with his fingers the long damp scalp-locks that hung at his belt; he gazed upon his kinsmen as they lay there in the firelight with their weapons and their war gear. The feuds of ages had set upon their faces deep lines which showed beneath the war paint.

The fire smouldered away to soft pink coals, like seashells; the noises of the forest hushed in sleep, but Hiawatha lay there, with his eyes half open, thinking.

Hiawatha's fasting

Presently he arose. He trod softly through the rim of sleepers. He stepped beyond the open to a wood. He stooped and dug a hollow in the leaf mould with his scalp-knife. He rose again, and one by one he smoothed the scalp-locks of his foes and laid them gently in the hollow, which he then filled with leaves and bushes. Then he trod his way into the forest to the shadow of a rock where no warrior's foot had ventured. Here he built a tent and fasted seven days and seven nights. He prayed to the Great Spirit:

Not for greater skill in hunting,
Not for greater craft in fishing,
Not for triumph in the battle;

.

But for profit of the people—
How to help them live like brothers.

When the days of prayer and fast were over, Hiawatha went back to old Nokomis. The braves who had come home from the battle had already told Nokomis of his prowess. She ran to meet him, shouting out her welcome. He was wan and thin and haggard, but his eyes were very bright.

"Where are the scalp-locks?" called Nokomis, in haste to feel them with her fingers.

Hiawatha told her of his days of prayer and fasting. He said the Great Spirit had taught him how to live and toil and suffer, that the Iroquois might prosper.

He cleared the streams of logs and sand bars; he dried the swamps that bred diseases; he taught the use of barks and roots and herbs for sickness and the antidotes for poisons; he tilled the soil for maize which brought forth yellow harvests so that no one need go hungry. He summoned all the nations of his language to sit with him in a council—Mohawks,¹ Oneidas, Cayugas, Senecas, and Onondagas.

He persuaded them to stop their wrangling and to smoke the pipe of peace around a camp-fire—five great nations, quite united under the name of Iroquois.

The Five Nations

He painted, on smooth birch bark, shapes and figures which had meaning, so that they might speak to one another from a distance: life was a white circle, death

The sign writing

¹ See map, p. 6 .

was a black circle. The earth was a straight line. The sky was a bow above the straight line. When the space between was white it meant daytime. When there were stars it was night. A point on the right of the bow meant sunrise; a point at the top curve, midday; a point on the left meant sunset. Waving lines between the bow and straight line meant rainy weather. And so Hiawatha painted on the smooth

INDIAN SIGN WRITING^a

white birch bark to preserve among the Iroquois the victories of their warriors, and the adventures of their hunters, and the visions of their prophets.

It is tradition that Hiawatha lived for many years doing good among his people. When he saw his death approaching he called the Five Nations to a council. He told them he must leave them; but the Great Spirit would send a race of white men in canoes of thunder,¹ from across the morning water, who could teach them how to weave, and build warm houses, and till the earth for grain and fruit. If they listened to these teachings, they would flourish like the leaves in spring-time; but if they heeded not the white men's wisdom, they would scatter like the leaves in autumn.

Hiawatha's prophecy

It will be interesting to read whether the red men in America listened to the counsel of their prophet.

Of Hiawatha's farewell to his people Longfellow says:

¹ Ships carrying guns.

^a Translation: (1) Five canoes, bearing fifty-two warriors, the chief, Kishkemunasee, or (2) the kingfisher, leading in the first canoe, with (5) Stealth, the panther and (6) Wisdom, the serpent. The crossing occupied three days—(3) three suns under a rainbow—when land [(7) the tortoise] was reached and the band advanced with courage [(4) the eagle].

On the shore stood Hiawatha,
Turned and waved his hand at parting;
.....
Launched his birch canoe for sailing,
.....
Whispered to it, "Westward! westward!"
.....
And the evening sun descending
.....
Left upon the level water
One long track and trail of splendor,
Down whose stream, as down a river,
Westward, westward Hiawatha
.....
Sailed into the dusk of evening

MARCO POLO
THE FIRST GEOGRAPHER OF ASIA

1254-1324



MARCO POLO was a Venetian. Venice, you know, is a city in Italy and lies on islands in a great lagoon near the head of the Adriatic Sea. Most of the streets of Venice are canals, where boats are used instead of wagons or cars.

These canals are crossed by bridges, and the houses along the banks have one door opening upon a narrow pavement and another upon the water, so that people may go through the city on foot or in a boat, just as they please.



MARCO POLO
1254-1324

he Grand Canal

The Grand Canal is the principal water-street of Venice. Whenever ships drop anchor at the foot of the Grand Canal, fleets of gondolas, which are long, narrow boats with high prows, dart from the smaller canals into this larger one to meet them.

he commerce of
enice

In the days of Marco Polo, huge warehouses rose at the water's edge near the end of the Grand Canal. Here the gold, silver, copper, iron, and tin; the pitch and dried fish and the hemp and raw wool from all over Europe lay waiting for the ships from the far-away East. And when the ships came, an exchange was made for gems, silks, carpets, and other manufactured articles which Europeans had not yet learned

to make; and for the dye-woods and spices which were not yet grown in Europe.

People in those days did not know anything about potatoes, and they cultivated very few other vegetables. Breadstuffs and meats required high seasoning to keep up an appetite. So there was a great demand for cloves, cinnamon, allspice, ginger, nutmeg, and other spices, not only those pleasant to the taste, but also those thought to heal diseases. Some of the spices were worth their weight in gold.

Marco Polo liked nothing so much as to watch the ships, with the flag of St. Mark at their prows, sail up to the foot of the Grand Canal. The flag of St. Mark

The flag of St. Mark



THE GRAND CANAL, VENICE

showed that the ships belonged to Venice. They came laden with wares from the East. Marco's father and uncle were merchants and had gone to the East before he was old

enough to know anything about it. Would they ever come back? His grandmother sighed out that they had been drowned in the Black Sea, or eaten by bears in the forest beyond, or killed by robbers for the fine clothes they wore.

But Marco could not believe that his father and uncle were dead. Day after day he paced up and down the Rialto over the Grand Canal. The Rialto was a curious arched bridge—high and broad with rows of booths where merchants traded, and Jews lent their

The Rialto

money, and sea captains just in from distant ports strolled to gossip about their voyages. The sea captains petted the bright-eyed little fellow who trudged so constantly at their heels. But whenever he asked timid questions about the Black Sea and the forests beyond, where his father and uncle were lost, they shook their heads slowly and said:

“ ’Tis a bad voyage, lad, for a white man to make!” And that always made Marco tremble and bite his lips so the tears would not come.

Marco studies a
map of the world



When he grew older he studied a map in a shop on the Rialto. This is the kind of map it was—just Europe and the north end of Africa and the west end of Asia. That was all the people of Europe, even the wisest, then knew about the geography of the world. There was no Africa except near the coast, no Australia, New Zealand, Java, or Japan. There was no North or South America nor any Pacific Ocean. Yet to Marco the world seemed very big indeed. It took months and months for caravans of camels to bring the fine things of the East to the Black Sea or to the Mediterranean Sea, and then the slow-sailing ships were a long time getting to the warehouses at the foot of the Grand Canal. Yes, the world was large, and it seemed easy enough for a man to be lost in it. He said he would learn to be a merchant, and then he would sail to the Black Sea, and go on and on until he found his father. But he had hardly begun to know one kind of silk from another when his father and uncle came home. They said they had traveled far into the

East to the court of the Great Khan of China who had kept them in his service and then sent them away with rich gifts.

The very next year Nicolo the father, Maffio the uncle, and Marco the son, who was then fifteen, set out together to trade where white men had never traded before.

1270
Marco Polo starts
for China

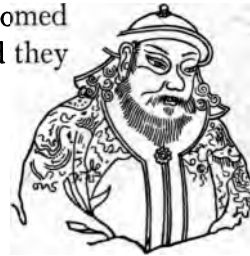
They went to Acre in Palestine, and then to the Caspian Sea. They followed the Oxus River and crossed the Desert of Kobi to a country of hills, where the Great Khan had a summer palace. The khan, which was the Tartar name for emperor, welcomed the father and the uncle with joy, for he had feared they would never return.

"And who is this young stranger?" asked he, pointing to Marco, who was closely regarding his yellow skin and queer, slanting eyes.

"My lord," replied Nicolo, "it is your servant, my son."

"Then," said the khan, "he is welcome. I am much pleased with the lad."

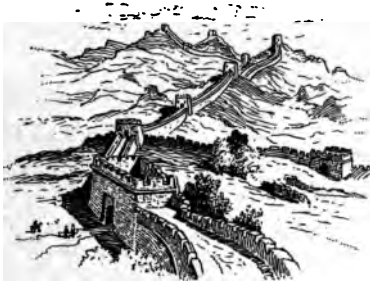
When autumn came, the three Polos followed the court beyond the Great Wall of China to Peking, where the khan spent his winters. Marco, who was handsome and clever, delighted all who knew him. He mastered the Chinese language and wore the Chinese dress, and studied Chinese manners until no one appeared to such advantage as he. The khan trusted him and sent him on errands to the farthest cities in his empire. Whenever the young Venetian returned from a journey, he was able to give valuable informa-



THE GREAT KHAN

The Great Wall

War between China
and Japan



THE GREAT WALL OF CHINA

1295

Marco Polo returns
home

tion about the mountains and rivers and caravan routes he had seen. When China went to war with the Islands of Japan he taught the Chinese armies how to make engines for throwing stones, and how to draw up in battle array as the armies of Europe did.

Years came and went and still the three Polos did not return to Venice. The gossips on the Rialto said they must have been drowned in the sea or eaten by bears in the forests beyond, or killed by robbers for the fine clothes they wore. Twenty-five years passed by. One day the Polos came home. The father and the uncle were then quite old; even Marco's dark curls were beginning to show some white. All three wore ragged clothes of a foreign cut, and were so changed in appearance that when they knocked at their door the relative who opened would not let them in.

"No, no!" cried he. "Such fellows as you cannot be our rich cousins. No, no, you cannot impose upon us."

The three turned away. They went to the finest hotel in the city. They ordered a dinner to which they invited all of their kinsmen. The slaves who carried the invitations brought back word that each one had said he would be pleased to meet such grand gentlemen merchants as their masters seemed to be.

The three Polos, clad in velvet and lace, received their guests with low bows and soft speech, but they did not give their real names. After the feast was over

Marco Polo gives a
cast

and the slaves had withdrawn they went to an adjoining room and brought forth a pile of coarse clothes.

"These, our kindred," said they, "are the garments we wore coming home and you would not receive us."

Without saying more they took knives and ripped open the rags. They pulled out rubies and diamonds and sapphires and pearls of great price. They heaped the gems upon the table before the astonished guests, who cried out that they must indeed be the lost Polos—Maffio the uncle, Nicolo the father, and Marco the son.

And on the Rialto and in the palaces and in the hundreds of gondolas that sped through the canals, people talked of the wisdom and wealth of the Polos. When the merchants of Venice came to the house to hear about their adventures, the uncle and the father always nodded to Marco. And Marco told how they had traveled on and on toward the great northeast "for a thousand days," to the palace of the Great Khan. He told about China and caravan routes, and how they had at last left China by sea, escorting a princess who was to marry a king in a distant land, and how their ship sailed three months until they came to an island called Java, and how they passed over the Indian Sea and then went overland to Bagdad and then to Constantinople, whence they had set sail for Venice. He told about Sumatra and Borneo and the Spice Islands, and about Calicut



Marco Polo
describes his
travels

Marco Polo's Travels

in Malabar, where the finest cotton stuffs in the world were manufactured and where Chinese ships with mats for sails unloaded their cargoes of drugs, spices, cloth of silver, and gauzes of silk for Europe. He told about the unknown islands of Japan, where the king's palace was plated over with gold as the palaces of Europe's kings were plated with lead. Indeed, he talked so much about the splendor of courts, and the glory of temples and tombs, and used the word millions



Lord Millions"

so often that the Venetians nicknamed him "Lord Millions." But the merchants of Venice agreed that he had done them great service, for he had made it possible for them to send their own agents to the far-away East, instead of depending upon the Arabs.

Now, Venice had a rival in trade. Genoa, on the west coast of Italy, also sent ships to the Black Sea, or to the east shore of the Mediterranean, for spices and silks. Whenever the fleets of the rivals met, one was sure to give chase with every sail set.

1298
war between
Genoa and Venice

One day it was called from gondola to gondola in all the canals of Venice that a Genoese fleet had entered the Adriatic Sea. That meant an attack on the city. There was bustle and noise in the water-streets. The people rushed to the square of St. Mark's, crying: "Viva San Marco!"¹ The doge, who was the mayor, called the council to his palace. War-ships were manned, and merchant vessels were loaded with soldiers in armor instead of cargoes of spices and silk. Even the slim gondolas hoisted the flag of St. Mark, and marshaled in battle array at the end of the Grand Canal.

Marco Polo was given command of one of the ships. He buckled a breastplate over his velvet gown, put on helmet and sword, and sailed straight to the front. His ship was a galley, long and wide with high, gilded beak. Trumpeters and men in bright armor and guns for throwing stones were at the prow, and at the stern stood Marco Polo and his officers. Between prow and stern, down in the waist of the ship, were long benches where Turkish slaves, chained close together, pulled at the oars; and between ran men to lash them into hotter haste.

Out into the blue Adriatic sped the Venetian ships, with Polo quite to the front. "Viva San Marco!" he cried to his men who hurled stones from their guns. Now Polo had seen gunpowder in China, but its value was not then known and it was used only for fireworks.

¹ Long live St. Mark!



ST. MARK'S, VENICE

Polo in command of a galley

Gunpowder in China

So he lost a fine opportunity to send the stones at long range. On he sped, as fast as the wind and the exertions of his slaves could drive the ship. He ran alongside a Genoese galley, threw out grappling irons, and leaped aboard. Foot to foot, blade to blade, he fought. One giant man in armor struck him a blow on the helmet, another thrust a sword through his thigh. His ship sprung a leak, his slaves, fearing drowning more than the lash of their masters, dropped their oars. A Genoese trumpeter sounded a call and two more of the enemy's ships ran up. Polo and his men and his trembling slaves were captured and taken to Genoa. They were all put into prison; but Marco Polo, being a distinguished man, was given better quarters than the rest.

Marco Polo a
prisoner

As soon as it became noised about that the traveler who had seen the Great Khan was in prison, people flocked to his window bars to hear him talk. He had one of the Venetian prisoners write down what he said, and when at last he was permitted to return home, his book was copied by scribes.¹

1299
Marco Polo dictates
book

The books of Marco Polo were bought at a high price by merchants and princes who wanted to find out all about Persia and Thibet and China and Japan and the Spice Islands.

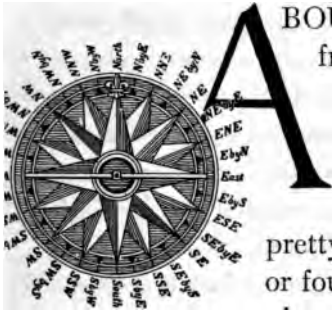
1324
Death of Marco Polo

Marco Polo lived long in the lofty palace which you may see to this day in Venice. Even before he died the trade of Europe with the East grew vastly. Priests and embassies from kings traveled safely to the rich cities described by the "First Geographer of Asia."

¹ The art of printing was not yet known in Europe.

PRINCE HENRY THE NAVIGATOR

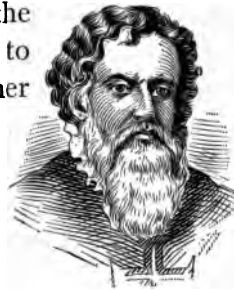
1394-1460



The mariner's
compass

ABOUT the time Marco Polo returned from Asia to show Europeans the land routes to the Spice Islands, the mariner's compass was perfected. With the aid of the faithful compass, sailors felt pretty safe, whether the sky was fair or foul. Warriors and merchants and pirates and fishermen scoured every nook of the Mediterranean Sea. But a hundred years passed before ships ventured very far out on the Atlantic Ocean.

Prince Henry the Navigator was the first prince of Europe to send ships to explore the ocean. Prince Henry's father was John the First, king of Portugal; his mother was the beautiful Queen Philippa, granddaughter of Edward the Third of England, and his uncle was the "Black Prince," a famous English knight about whom poets loved to sing.



PRINCE HENRY
THE NAVIGATOR
1394-1460

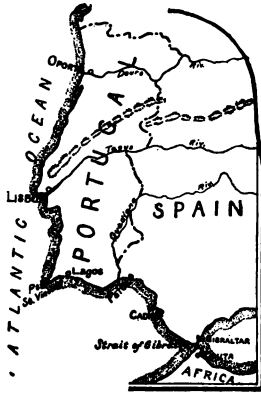
Portugal faced the ocean with a long line of coast and had tall, straight timber for ship-building; but whale oil and dried fish were about all that the ships brought into Lisbon.

Prince Henry heard at court a great deal of talk about

the splendors of Venice and Genoa. His mother, the queen, said England had warehouses there, though Lisbon was a nearer port and might well be the center of trade for all Europe.

The merchants of Portugal had tried over and over again to get a share in the trade of the far-away East. They would set sail from Lisbon or Oporto bravely enough, steer straight south, close to shore, and then dart through the Strait of Gibraltar¹ into the Mediterranean Sea. But they were sure to be chased out by the Italians, who wanted the trade for themselves.

Lisbon



1415

A war on the Moors

When Prince Henry was still quite young he sailed away with his father to make war on the Moors. The Moors were Arabs who had conquered the north coast of Africa and a good part of Spain, and were trying to conquer Portugal. The Portuguese army embarked for the north coast of Africa to lay siege to Ceuta, a rich Moorish port.

Prince Henry sees
riches from the
East

After many weeks the gates were torn down, and Prince Henry was one of the first to enter the city. The streets were flowing with honey and oil from the jars that had been broken during the siege; and bales of silk, caskets of jewels, and boxes of spices and perfumes that had come from the East were piled in confusion under the broken roofs of the houses.

Prince Henry was amazed at the vast store of treasure he saw.

"If our merchants might only trade with that far-

¹ See map.

away East!" he sighed. But he knew very well that it was of little use to try to compete with the countries that bordered upon the Mediterranean Sea, and he kept wondering if there were not some other route to the Spice Islands.

King John was so proud of his son's prowess during the siege that he made him a knight, and Prince Henry chose for his motto "*Le talent de bien faire*," which may perhaps be best translated: "The desire to do a thing well." Now the thing Prince Henry wanted to do more than all others was to find a water-way to the Spice Islands.

Prince Henry is
made a knight

Prince Henry's motto

As soon as he reached Lisbon he called the chief merchants together.

"We have carried our armies into this sea that you fear," he said. "Now push on to its east shore with your ships."

The men shook their heads.

"We have tried it, your highness," they said; and they told very sad stories, indeed, of plundered cargoes and ships destroyed.

Prince Henry talks
with the sailors

"Is there no other way?" asked the prince. "A straight way to India by water? 'Twould be cheaper than the caravan route."

"To the north, around England, the ice blocks the way."

"To the south around Africa then?"

Ideas about Africa

"No ships sail beyond Cape Non, my lord."

"And why not beyond?"

"The ocean boils!" cried one merchant.

"Hot-water monsters puff steam from their noses and swallow a ship at a gulp!" cried another.

"Aye, aye, your highness," cried a third, "and Africa has no end."

"Oh, no man can sail around Africa!" they all cried in a breath.

Now Prince Henry could not argue the question with these merchants, for he really knew nothing to say. But he resolved from that moment to find out what he could about that vast mysterious ocean which stretched so far to the west and south. He went to Point St. Vincent on the south coast of Portugal. And there upon a rocky headland against which the ocean beat upon three sides he built a high tower. Then he sent to several foreign countries for teachers in map-drawing and ship-building and the arts of navigation. He spent his days in hard work. Young noblemen and plain seamen from all over Europe soon flocked to Point St. Vincent to study navigation. It was said that Prince Henry's court of the sea rivaled his father's court of fashion.

nce Henry
blishes a
ool of
igation at Point
Vincent

arco Polo's book

One happy day his brother, Pedro the Traveler, brought him a copy of Marco Polo's book. He read all about China, Japan, and the Spice Islands, and was more determined than ever to find a way to the East.

Now, the north shore of Africa lay almost in sight of the high tower where Prince Henry kept daily watch. Did Africa stretch on and on without any end, as the merchants believed? One old Greek book said that Africa might be an island. If it should prove to be an island then ships might sail around it.

Prince Henry drew maps. He adjusted new instru-

ments for fixing the position of the sun and the stars. He sent ship after ship from the nearby seaport of Lagos. Sometimes the pilots steered to the west. They rediscovered the Madeira Islands and the Azores which were soon after settled by the Portuguese. But the ocean seemed very dangerous so far from the mainland. The pilots preferred to sail nearer shore. They pushed farther and farther down the coast of Africa until one pilot sailed beyond Cape Non. No one, to any man's knowledge, had ever before gone so far south.

"Did the water boil before your ship?" asked Prince Henry, when the pilot made his report.

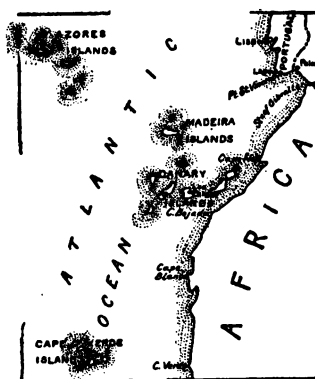
"No, your highness. Yet 'tis quite as far as any sailor should go," replied the pilot. And he told how a little beyond the cape a good Christian turned so black that his own wife and child would not know him.

The prince scoffed at such superstition. Sometimes he threatened and sometimes he praised. On down the African coast crept the timid pilots, until they passed Cape Bojador. They landed below the cape and discovered a race of negroes, as black as night, with thick lips and hair like black wool. They found ivory and gold dust and nuts. When the ships returned to Portugal with slaves and gold and ivory, such as were sold in the markets of the Mediterranean, the whole kingdom of Portugal was thrown into a ferment of joy. A ship soon passed

1420
The Madeira Islands
rediscovered by the
Portuguese

The Azores

Cape Non



1434
Cape Bojador



AFRICAN NEGRO

1445
Cape Verde rounded

1460
Death of Prince
Henry

Vasco da Gama

Christopher
Columbus

Cape Verde, and the Portuguese trade increased until a little black slave was leading the horse of nearly every rich man in Europe. When it was found that the coast beyond Cape Verde trended eastward Prince Henry's hope rose higher still. But he died at Point St. Vincent before his sailors had found the real length of Africa.

Prince Henry was buried with pomp in the monastery of Baratha by the side of his mother, the queen. Over his tomb lies his statue in full armor. His motto is inscribed above: "*Le talent de bien faire*" (The desire to do a thing well), which had been the secret of his success—a success so great that it continued many years after his death. In Prince Henry's school at Point St. Vincent, Vasco da Gama studied, who found the water-route to the Spice Islands and thus moved the trade with the East from the Mediterranean Sea to the Atlantic Ocean; and there, too, studied Christopher Columbus, who crossed the Atlantic Ocean, discovered America, and pointed a way to others who sailed around the whole globe.

CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS THE DISCOVERER OF AMERICA

1436-1506



WHILE Prince Henry the Navigator's ships were searching for an end to Africa, Christopher Columbus was born in Genoa, Italy. Christopher's two brothers were Bartholomew and Diego. The boys became sailors at an early age and had many a trip on the blue Mediterranean Sea. Sometimes they were in sea fights with the sailors of Venice; for Genoa on the west coast

of Italy and Venice on the east coast were such rivals in trade that when their merchant fleets met, one would very often go staggering back to port, while the other sailed triumphantly on for its cargo of spices and silks.

Genoa was a beautiful city perched on sloping hills that overlooked a bay. Even the poor of Genoa had enough to wear and to eat; because the climate was so mild, and olives, fruit, and fish were to be had almost for the asking.

The Columbus boys laughed when they heard how people to the north of the Alps had to wear ill-smelling furs in winter and crouch about fires while

1436
Christopher Columbus
born in Genoa



Rivalry between
Genoa and Venice

CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS
1436 - 1506

England

the black smoke¹ made the tears run down their cheeks. They heard that England, far to the north, had nothing but dried fish and raw wool and tin to exchange for the rich things of Italy. Who wanted to live in such a poor country as that? Not the Columbus boys, indeed!

Marco Polo's prison

They were proud of Genoa's great trade with the East. They loved to stroll past the prison where Marco Polo had written his wonderful book about China, Japan, and the Spice Islands, and to lie in the sun on the wharf to watch the ships sail in and out of the bay.



THE BAY OF GENOA

1453
The Turks conquer
Constantinople

But while the boys were still in their teens a change came to the proud city of Genoa. The Turks conquered Constantinople and a whole fleet of ships came up the bay with empty holds and drooping flags. The Turks had demanded such high toll that trade on the Black Sea meant ruin.

The Columbus brothers knew that if Genoa succeeded in the Mediterranean Sea, she must have better sailors than Venice, and they decided to study navigation.

Christopher and
Bartholomew go to
Point St. Vincent

Now the best naval school in Europe was one which Henry the Navigator had founded at Point St. Vincent.² Bartholomew went first to Portugal, and two years later Christopher went. They studied chart-making and ship-building. They made voyages to the Azores

¹ Chimneys were not yet invented.

² See map, p. 24.

and to the Canaries. Once they went down the coast of Guinea, and as they sailed they talked about Prince Henry's belief that ships might sail around Africa. Bartholomew could think of nothing else but trying to reach India by sailing south. But Christopher had other notions.

He had begun to believe that the world was a globe instead of being flat, for he had read a book by the great English traveler, Sir John Mandeville, who said it seemed possible for a man to sail on and on until he would reach at last the place from which he had started. Now, the teachers of navigation made no mention of Sir John's theory. They believed the world stretched out to four corners and was bounded on all sides by an endless sea.

Christopher studies
geography

Christopher Columbus thought over the question quite seriously. He made a voyage to the north, where he heard that Leif the Lucky had once sailed west from Greenland to a land of vines and flowers. What land could that be? He heard in the Azores that canes of enormous size, such as Marco Polo said grew in India, had washed to shore with a western wind; and at Las Flores the bodies of two dead men with broad faces like those described in Marco Polo's book had drifted in. It is tradition, too, that on a high hill in Corvo, of the Azores, was the statue of a man on a horse, carved out of solid rock. No one knew how or when the statue was placed there. The man's left hand lay on the horse's mane, and his right hand pointed toward the west as if to something beyond the mist of the sea. It was said that this statue had

1001
Leif the Lucky
reaches land in the
west

Messages from the
unknown west

pointed thus for ages and ages, but Columbus was the first of all men to understand what it meant.

1474
Toscanelli's letter

However all this may be, the more Christopher thought and studied, the more convinced he became that there was land to the west, and that the land was India. He wrote to Toscanelli, an Italian geographer, to ask what he thought. Toscanelli replied that he truly believed the Spice Islands might be reached by sailing due west three thousand miles from Lisbon, and he sent a map of eastern Asia which he had drawn from Marco Polo's description of that region. Columbus hastened to King John with Toscanelli's letter and map.

King John of
Portugal

"Three thousand miles, your majesty," he said. "The great geographer believes it. The way around Africa, if it is ever found, will be much farther than that."

King John had high hopes of reaching the Indies by the African route and would not promise aid, but he had copies made from the chart of Columbus and secretly sent men of his own to the west. The sailors soon put back to port. They said that beyond the Azores, monsters had risen out of a "sea of darkness," and vast shadows had warned them back.

1484
Columbus quits
Portugal

When Columbus found out that the king had deceived him he quit Portugal in disgust. If Bartholomew tried to persuade him to give up his notion and to embark in the African expedition he must have replied: "No, no, my brother, you may sail south and I will sail west. We shall see who comes back first from the East."

We may well believe he spoke thus, for he shook the dust of Portugal from his feet and went to his birthplace for aid in his plans. The Council of Genoa could give him no hope. They said the city was growing poorer and poorer since Constantinople belonged to the Turks, and Genoa had no money to spend on experiments.

Columbus goes to
Genoa

Then Columbus went to Venice, but the Venetians said India was nearer Italy by the overland route than it could possibly be by way of the "sea of darkness." Columbus accordingly went to Spain, where he sought an audience with the king and queen. Now Ferdinand and Isabella had been watching the expeditions of King John. They knew very well that if the Portuguese found a water-way to the East they would quickly become the richest nation in Europe.

Columbus goes to
Venice

1484
Columbus goes to
Spain

"Let King John go on sailing south," they said. "Who knows but that there is a shorter way by the west?"

The Council of
Salamanca

Their majesties accordingly summoned a council of wise men at Salamanca. Columbus appeared before the council. He was tall and dignified in his bearing; his face was ruddy, his eyes were a piercing gray, and his hair fell in waving locks to his shoulders. He carried a globe in one hand and in the other he held Toscanelli's letter and map.



COLUMBUS BEFORE THE COUNCIL OF SALAMANCA

You can almost see him bow very low to the council, for they were thought to be very wise men, indeed. He read the great geographer's letter, and talked about the queer, round globe, which none of the wise men had ever seen before. He told them just what he believed about land in the far west.



A MOOR

The "wise" men of Salamanca listened and shook their puzzled heads. They said it was quite impossible that the earth could be round, for then people on the under side would walk with their heels up and heads down, and it must rain, snow, and hail from the bottom side up. They declared it was beneath the dignity of their majesties to believe such nonsensical stories. As the Genoese sailor left their august presence you can almost see them tap on their foreheads and wink at one another as if they thought his mind was not quite right.

Now Ferdinand and Isabella were so anxious to reach India before King John that they might have lent aid in spite of the council, had it not been for a war with the Moors. The Moors were Arabs who had conquered a part of Spain hundreds of years before. Some of the Moors were great scholars, but none of them believed in the Christian religion, and they were not willing to acknowledge Ferdinand and Isabella as their king and queen.

Just at this time a bitter war was raging with Boabdil, the Moorish king of Granada. Isabella said that Spain might possibly give ships for an expedition to the west after the Moors were defeated.

Columbus the Italian, with new hope in his heart, followed the court from camp to camp.

in at war with
Moors

Boabdil

Presently news spread over all Europe and into the royal tents that Bartholomew Diaz had sailed in a Portuguese ship five thousand miles to the end of Africa, and had seen an open water-way to the far East.

"Five thousand miles to the end of Africa, your majesties!" cried Columbus, "and then perhaps five thousand more to reach the Indian ports. See, your majesties, Toscanelli says that only three thousand miles to the west lie these Spice Islands. Let Spain sail west while Portugal tries to sail east!"

It was a great temptation to Ferdinand and Isabella. Portugal was already growing rich in the slaves and ivory and gold dust of Africa. A cheap route to India would make King John a dangerous neighbor. Their majesties finally promised that when the war was over they would fit out three ships to explore the "sea of darkness."

The Moors were conquered at last. Columbus watched the triumphal procession of Ferdinand as it passed through the streets of Granada. There were pages in gold-embroidered dresses, and ministers of state in gorgeous attire, and King Ferdinand himself in a royal mantle of crimson, which almost concealed his gold-harnessed horse, and Spanish nobles in silver armor and nodding plumes, and then fair Queen Isabella with her pages and dames.

Trumpets sounded, horses pranced, banners fluttered, and the conquered Boabdil, all dressed in black, rode toward the king. He reined in his horse at Ferdinand's side. He bowed very low, and with a flush of shame upon his haughty brow he gave up

1486
Diaz reaches Cape
of Good Hope

Ferdinand and
Isabella conquer
the Moors



THE SANTA MARIA

the keys of his beloved city, and laid aside shield and lance. Then with downcast eyes he again bowed low, and passed slowly along the road which would lead him out of Spain.

1492
Columbus sails from
Palos (Aug. 3)



THE NIÑA

Columbus now renewed his entreaties for ships and at last, from the harbor of Palos—Oh joy for the whole world!—the *Santa Maria*, which Columbus himself commanded, the *Pinta*, and the *Niña*, which means the “baby,” sailed for the waters where the sun seemed to set.

It is said that Columbus bore with him Marco Polo’s book, so that he might locate Peking and the other cities he would visit, and that he carried a letter from Ferdinand addressed to the Chinese khan, the descendant of Marco Polo’s friend. You see, he thought the round world was smaller than it is, and did not dream that the two great continents of North and South America lay between Europe and Asia. And Toscanelli, the greatest geographer of his age, did not dream of that, either.

The *Santa Maria*,
the *Pinta*, and
the *Niña* pass
the Canaries



THE PINTA

The sailors on the three ships bore themselves bravely enough until they left the Canaries. Then the weakest hearts began to beat very fast. Columbus sailed on and on through unknown seas. Nine days passed with the winds blowing steadily from the east. The sailors swore that with an east-blowing wind they could never sail back home. Even the stoutest hearts began to quake.

Some scoffed at their commander behind his back. They said he might just as well try to find land in the sky as in that trackless sea.

Columbus kept watching well his course. When the wind blew from the southwest the men cried out that now was the chance to start home. But Columbus sailed on and on. One desperate sailor whispered that if he might fall into the sea while looking at his stars, the ships could turn about; but the commander's courage and dignity kept him from harm.

Some crabs, clinging to sea moss, floated past; the excited crew said the crabs must come from a shore. Then land-birds were seen, and Columbus turned his prow to the southwest to follow their flight.

"Land!" shouted the eager-eyed crews more than once. They had seen only clouds. All kept anxiously watching. The king had promised a purse of gold to the sailor who should first see land, and Columbus had promised a velvet cloak.

A carved stick washed up against the *Pinta*, and to the *Niña* floated the branch of a haw tree, with bright berries on it. Then the *Santa Maria* entered the chase. One night as Columbus stood at the prow of the *Santa Maria* he saw a light which flickered back and forth like a torch in the hand of a man who runs.

1492
Columbus discovers
land (Oct. 21)

The following morning, Friday, October 21, 1492, at two o'clock in the morning, the *Pinta* signaled "land" to the two other ships. No one slept after that. Day broke. Green hills and valleys lay in sight. Men were seen running along the shore. Land

and human beings—friends perhaps! The crews burst forth into hymns of praise, and tears streamed down many a storm-beaten cheek.

Columbus, in crimson silk and shining armor, landed with his men all in gala dress. He spread out the banner of Spain and knelt down on the beach in prayer. He named the island San Salvador (Holy Savior), and the strange, red-skinned, half-naked natives who presently crowded about him, he called "Indians," because he believed he had reached India.

San Salvador

Indians



THE VOYAGES OF COLUMBUS

skimming over the morning sea. When the sails fell, and as the black hulls of the ships drew near, they thought whales from the deep were swimming to shore. And when on nearer view they saw men clad in armor that shone like the sun, with pale faces and blue eyes, they cried aloud that the gods had come at last, and now their corn would be in plenty, and their rivers would abound in fish, and the forests would fail not in game. But for all their delight they were afraid at first and hid in the forest.

Now, these natives had been watching his ship almost as long as he had been watching their island. When they saw the sails in the night, they thought they were great white spirits sweeping past. At dawn they thought they were the wings of giant birds

Presently they approached with offerings of maize. Columbus gave them bright-colored caps for their bare heads, and strings of glass beads and bells. Some of the men wore gold ornaments in their noses. They told Columbus by signs that the gold was from the south, and they said "Cubanacan, Cubanacan," "Cubanacan" which meant "a part of Cuba," but Columbus was sure they were talking about Marco Polo's "Great Khan," and hurried away much rejoiced.

He coasted along the north edge of Cuba. On Cuba Havana Bay you may see today a little white chapel which is believed to be over the spot where Columbus first heard mass on that island. He heard of a great city farther inland, which he thought might be Pekin. But the ambassadors he sent to announce his arrival returned saying they could find only fifty rude huts.



COLUMBUS CHAPEL ON HAVANA BAY

Columbus maintained nevertheless that he had reached China, and he made his men say, under pain of the lash, that, if he chose, he could go on west to Spain as Marco Polo had gone to Venice.

Columbus sailed to the island of Hayti. Here he constructed a fort out of the timbers of the *Santa Maria*, which was wrecked, and his men built a boat to navigate the surrounding waters, with sails and masts and bolts and cables—a wonderful sight to the

Columbus sails for
Spain

Indians who watched them at their work. Columbus left forty men in charge of the fort and set sail in the *Niña* for home.

The return was so stormy that once he thought the ship would go down. The heroic man resolved that his discovery should not be lost to the world. He accordingly wrote two accounts of his voyage, wrapped them in wax, and enclosed each in a cask. One of the casks he threw overboard, and the other he kept on the ship.

1493
Columbus reaches
the harbor of Palos
(Mar. 15)

Ferdinand and
Isabella receive
Columbus

The parade

The *Niña*, which had become separated from the *Pinta*, reached the harbor of Palos in safety. From there Columbus hastened to Barcelona, where Ferdinand and Isabella were holding court.

He made a public entry into the city. First marched tall, straight Indians, smeared with paint and dressed in feathers and skins, and bracelets and rings of gold. No one had ever seen anything like them. Behind these came sailors with baskets filled with small gold trinkets, and bits of carved wood, and woven mats, and birds of rare plumage, both stuffed and alive. Columbus himself came last, mounted on a horse, and with him rode many gentlemen of the court.



PROCESSION OF COLUMBUS

The king and queen rose from the throne when he

entered the room where they sat, and he was allowed to sit in their presence while he told of the lands where it was summer in midwinter, with song-birds and flowers of rare tints and fruits of sweet flavor, quite as we find the West Indies now.

He spoke of rivers with sands of gold, and towns where the housetops shone with the precious metal. To be sure he had not seen such towns, but the trinkets he had found tended to prove that somewhere everything was just as the natives seemed to say by the signs they had made.

Columbus was called the "admiral;" his praises were put into verse and sung on the streets; when he walked about, men said "All hail!" to him as if he were a Spanish grandee, and his two sons were made pages at court. Admiral Columbus

Everybody believed that Columbus had found the east coast of China, and all the nobles of Spain were eager to explore the lands of the Great Khan.

Now the Portuguese king had not yet found a way to the Spice Islands. Ferdinand and Isabella accordingly were in haste to fit out another expedition. Fifteen hundred men, in seventeen ships, embarked on a second voyage. Columbus visited the Windward Islands and Jamaica and Porto Rico.

1493
Columbus starts on
his second voyage
(Sept. 25)

When he reached Hayti he found the fort he had left in charge of forty men quite deserted and overgrown with weeds. The Indians said part of the men had died with a fever and the rest had wandered away. He built a little town in Hayti, which he called Isabella, in honor of the queen, and placed his brother Diego

The town of
Isabella

in command. Then for many months he cruised about the West Indies, which he still believed to be the East Indies, but he found neither gold nor spices of value.

When he returned to Isabella, he saw his brother Bartholomew, which surprised and delighted him greatly. Many years before Columbus had sent Bartholomew to England to enlist the interest of King Henry VII in a voyage of discovery, and he had not seen him for so long that he may have thought he was dead.

Bartholomew told how he had started for England, had been captured by pirates, and had finally reached Lisbon just in time to sail with Diaz down the African coast. We may be sure that Columbus asked him about the Cape of Good Hope and the open sea that lay beyond.

"There is no doubt but that the Portuguese will one day reach the Indies," said Bartholomew.

"Ah, my brother," said Columbus, "but I have already reached them. All that remains is to find the great cities."

He appointed Bartholomew lieutenant-governor of all the lands he had discovered and returned again to Spain. But the chests he had taken with him for gold were quite empty and the Indian slaves he brought back died one by one.

Perhaps Ferdinand would have hesitated to spend any more money on voyages if he had not heard what had been done by King Henry VII. The Spanish ambassador at the English court wrote that John Cabot claimed to have sailed west to Asia and had brought back a large queer-looking fowl which they called a

Bartholomew
Columbus joins
his brothers

Bartholomew is
appointed lieutenant-
governor of the
West Indies

1496
Columbus returns
to Spain (June 11)

1497
John Cabot's voyage
to North America

turkey because they believed it had been found in the land¹ of the Turks.

Now this news made Ferdinand more eager than ever to reach the ports of India. With England searching west and Portugal searching south there was danger of quite losing the trade.

Columbus accordingly set sail with six ships for a third voyage. He discovered the mouth of the Orinoco River in South America, but finding little gold and no populous cities he went to Hayti, where his brother Bartholomew had founded Santo Domingo. To this day a part of Hayti is called Santo Domingo, after the town that Bartholomew Columbus built.

1498
Columbus starts on
his third voyage
(May 30)

The admiral found things were going badly in Santo Domingo. There had been trouble with the Indians, and the settlers were quarreling with one another. He stayed two years on the island trying to set things in order. At length an officer of Spain came to examine the affairs of the colony. He put Columbus and Bartholomew in chains and sent them as prisoners to Spain. Ferdinand ordered their chains taken off, and when Christopher told the story of his wrongs to Isabella, tears came to her eyes, so that he himself broke down and wept at her feet.

1499
Columbus in chains

Perhaps the admiral would not have been sent on another search if the Portuguese had not reached India. The Spanish ambassador at Lisbon wrote that Vasco da Gama had reached Calicut at last. He had loaded his ship with treasure and King John's income from the Calicut trade would soon make him the richest prince in Europe.

1498
Vasco da Gama
reaches Calicut

¹ This was probably Cape Breton Island.

Ferdinand and Isabella decided to try once more to find a short way to the East. They summoned Columbus to court.

"Sail for Calicut," they commanded, "and this time fail us not."

1502
Columbus starts on
his fourth voyage

Columbus had seen in his former voyage how the north coast of South America extended westward. He had a theory that by sailing along its northern coast he might come to a strait through which he could sail to Calicut.

The faithful Bartholomew cast his fortune again with Columbus, and the two brothers sailed west with four ships. Columbus steered to the Caribbean Sea. He reached the Isthmus of Panama, not very far from the place where our Panama Canal will be.

1504
Columbus returns to
Spain (Nov. 7)

He found no strait. There was gold in greater quantities than he had ever found before, and the natives told him of rich mines in the mountains. But it was Calicut he sought, and for many weary days he coasted in search of a strait. On his way home he was shipwrecked on the island of Jamaica, where he spent a year. At last, disappointed at every turn, he made his way back to Spain. The queen, his only protector, died shortly after. The king, quite out of patience with his admiral, allowed him to die neglected and alone.

1506
Death of Columbus
(May 20)

The great discoverer was buried at Valladolid. A few years later, when the treasures of Peru and Mexico were pouring into the golden tower of Seville, his remains were carried to that city with pomp. A marble slab on his tomb bore the words:

A Castilla y a Leon
Nuevo Mundo dio Colon.

(Columbus gave a new world to Castile and Leon.)

Later, as we shall see, his body was moved to the West Indies and then back again to Spain. So that even with death the voyages of the great admiral did not cease.

The whole world remembered him in 1892 and 1893. Those were the anniversaries of his discovery. On August 3, 1892, fleets from England, France, Portugal, Mexico, the United States, and other countries assembled at the port of Palos. They drew up in two lines, and out from between them sped three small sailships, the exact reproductions of the *Santa Maria*, the *Pinta*, and the *Niña*. Presently the *Niña* returned alone, as the *Niña* had returned bravely bearing the news of a new world—a little, little ship among the mighty men-of-war which boomed forth volleys of welcome.

1892-3
The 400th anniversary
of the discovery of
America

At Chicago, where a "World's Fair" was held, these copies of the three sailships were presented to the government of the United States to be preserved as relics. You may see today, pulling at their anchors on the edge of Lake Michigan, the *Santa Maria*, the *Pinta*, and the *Niña*, much as they looked when Christopher Columbus, the Genoese pilot, first dared the waves of the western sea.

FERNANDO DE SOTO
THE DISCOVERER OF THE MISSISSIPPI
1500-1542



FERNANDO DE SOTO lived in a lonesome castle in Spain. His father was of noble birth, but had spent his fortune in wars with the Moors so that he could not send his son to the school where noblemen's sons usually went.

In this gray, tumble-down castle the days passed drearily enough for Fernando, until he heard about Christopher Columbus and his voyages. Then he had a great deal to think about.

He said he would some day go to America. He would find gold enough there to restore the De Soto family to its old time splendor, and have a long train of servants like his father's rich friend, Don Pedro de Avila.



FERNANDO DE SOTO
1500 - 1542

Now Fernando knew very well that only the strongest and bravest could get passage to the new world on the king's ships. He practiced riding until he seemed a part of his horse when it pranced under the great stone gate and off down the highway. He exercised at leaping and fencing until he could use his sword as well as any Spanish grandee.

One day Don Pedro de Avila saw the lad handle his sword, and he said right away that he would give him

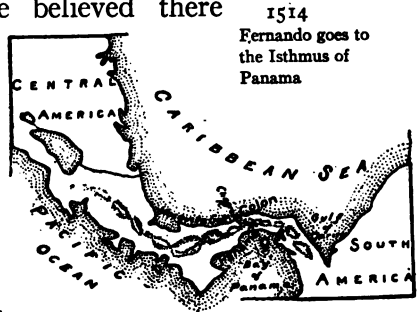
on Pedro de
vila

a chance to become a true knight. So Fernando was sent to school, where he took all the prizes for riding, leaping, and fencing.

When he was fourteen he went with Don Pedro to the Isthmus of Panama. Everyone believed there were gold mines in Panama, but the Indians would not tell where they were.

Fernando saw his countrymen coming to the isthmus by shiploads, with armies of soldiers that the king sent to protect them. It was not very long before he was made captain of a troop of horse, and his lance was counted equal to ten.

One brave man he met in the new world was Balboa, who had once lived in Hayti. Balboa had left that island without any money. He had hid behind some casks on a ship just as it was setting sail. A storm tossed the ship upon the sea until it was driven to the coast of Panama, where the Spanish settlements were. Balboa landed with the rest, and by the time Fernando met him he had become one of the chief men on the isthmus. He told Fernando how he had climbed to the top of a mountain and had seen to the south a vast blue sea like the Atlantic Ocean; and how he had traveled to its shore and waded into the waters with the gold and crimson banner of Spain in the one hand and his sword in the other, and in the name of King Ferdinand had taken possession of the water and all the land which bordered upon it.¹



1514
Fernando goes to
the Isthmus of
Panama

1513
Balboa discovers the
Pacific Ocean

¹ This was the Pacific Ocean.

1516
King Charles I
ends the throne
Spain

The king in Spain at this time was Charles, the son of Ferdinand and Isabella, who was even more anxious than his royal parents to make Spain the greatest kingdom in Europe. "Gold! gold!" King Charles kept calling to his nobles, and every man of them knew that the first who should find the mines would be given a high place at court.

Dorado

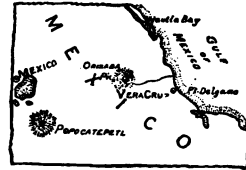
Balboa said some natives on the shore of the South Sea had talked about *El Dorado* (the gilded one), a country which took its name from an Indian king who worshiped the Sun in a temple of gold. Once every year slaves rubbed El Dorado in oil and powdered him over with gold dust. Then with precious jewels in his hands he entered a canoe and was rowed out upon a lake by slaves. In the presence of all his people he cast the jewels into the water as an offering to the Sun which they worshiped, and then he himself plunged into the water which lapped off the gold from his body. Some Spaniards said El Dorado was to the north; others said it was to the south, and in their mad search for gold and adventure they explored all the coasts of the Caribbean Sea.

1519
Magellan's ships
sailed around the
be

Meantime Magellan, a Portuguese, had sailed from Spain in five Spanish ships to see what he might find for the king. He swept down the coast of Brazil, and on past Patagonia till he reached Balboa's "South Sea," which he called the Pacific because it was so calm. On he went over the watery way, steering to the northwest, till he came to the islands which he called the "Ladrones" (Robber Islands) because an Indian there stole one of his rowboats.

Magellan discovered an island in the group afterwards named the Philippines, and was killed by the natives near the island of Cebu.¹

After his death one of the ships sailed on under another's command, passed the Cape of Good Hope, and reached Spain at last, proving to the world that the earth is round and that the East Indies could be reached by sailing west, though the way was very long.



The same year that this news reached Panama, word came that Hernando Cortez had sailed from Cuba to Vera Cruz; had burned his ships so that his men could not desert him; marched over mountains and through valleys and reached a city called Mexico,² where the montezuma, king of the Aztecs, lived.

1521
Hernando Cortez
conquers Mexico

What stories were told in Panama about this country to the north that Cortez had found!

Cortez, who had not yet heard about Magellan's voyage around the world, was quite sure that Mexico was China; for there were temples and palaces adorned with silver and gold, and broad roads and stone bridges, such as Marco Polo had described in his book.



The Aztecs

MONTEZUMA

It was said that Cortez had conquered Montezuma and seized his treasure-houses and gold mines, which were the richest in the world, and that fleets of ships were on their way to Spain carrying gold bars and nuggets.

Fernando de Soto was then twenty-one years old, and his heart grew big with ambition. He said he

¹ See map, p. 245.

² See map, p. 6.

must restore the faded glory of his impoverished family, and to do this he would achieve as great things as Cortez.

Francisco Pizarro

De Soto's best friend was Francisco Pizarro, who had become rich from some pearl islands he had found off the Panama coast. Pizarro said Mexico might have a great deal of gold; but that he knew it was not El Dorado; for he had been with Balboa when he discovered the South Sea, and he had heard the Indians say that the land of "the gilded one" lay far to the south.

The two friends talked of little else than the land of El Dorado. They wanted to go together to seek it, but De Soto was an officer in the royal guards, and could not get leave of absence. So Pizarro set off alone with a small company of adventurers who swore to obey his commands.

1524
Pizarro starts for
Peru

After many months Pizarro returned to tell a very wonderful story, indeed. He had sailed south and landed on a coast called Peru,¹ where the natives were quite different from the Indians of Panama. They dressed in fine spun cloth and wore chains of gold and jewels, and lived in many large cities where the houses were built of stone. He said there were rumors of vast mines farther inland, and of an Inca, or king, whose treasure was beyond the power of any man's count. He said he had gone back to Spain with chests of gold from the coast towns, and that King Charles had smiled upon him and had given him permission to raise an army and conquer the country, only asking a fifth of the treasure for the crown.

De Soto listened to this story with satisfaction, and

¹ See maps, pp. 6, 51.

began to make his arrangements to leave the Panama army.

1531
Pizarro sails again
for Peru
De Soto joins
Pizarro

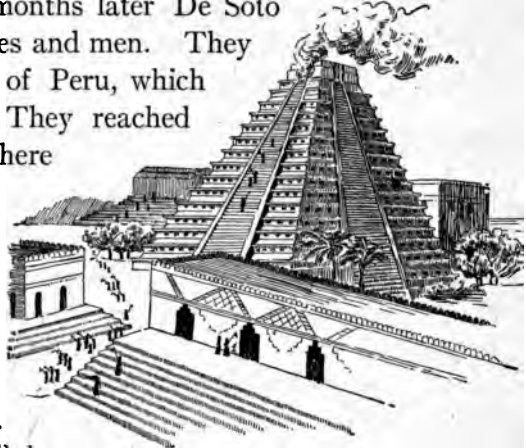
Meantime Pizarro sailed for Peru with about a hundred cavaliers. A few months later De Soto joined him with more horses and men. They marched toward the capital of Peru, which the natives called Cuzco. They reached the city of Caxamalca, where they heard that the Inca was coming toward them at the head of an army.

De Soto advanced with an escort of forty men to try to find out whether the king was a friend or a foe.

It was a gay cavalcade—all the cavaliers in armor and mounted on horses, harnessed in tassels and silk. When De Soto came back to Caxamalca he brought with him the brother

of the Inca, who was, to be sure, a red man; but he was so splendidly dressed and bore himself with such dignity that he inspired great respect. This prince brought presents of fruit and emeralds in gold vases, and said the Inca, his brother, would welcome the strangers.

When De Soto was alone with Pizarro he told him what he had learned about the splendors of Cuzco. There was a temple there with walls of gold; on one side on the inner wall of this temple was the picture of the Sun glittering with diamonds, emeralds, and rubies



AZTEC TEMPLE



The splendors of
Cuzco

There was a temple of the Moon, all of silver. Upon the altars of these temples were lilies of gold set with diamonds and pearls, and from the ceilings hung lamps trimmed with precious stones.

: Inca

De Soto said there were many populous cities in Peru, with splendid roads and bridges leading from city to city. He said the Inca had sat in the open on a high throne surrounded by his courtiers richly dressed, and he had bidden him welcome to Peru, through an interpreter, and had promised to come himself to Caxamalca.

He told Pizarro how he had replied to these kind words as well as he could, and had then wheeled and vaulted to show the speed of his horse, and had ordered his men to wheel theirs and to turn and to twist for the pleasure of the Inca; and when by mishap one of the knights had fallen from his horse, many had cried out in terror, thinking the man and the horse were one human being and had broken in two.

Pizarro and De Soto laughed aloud over that. And they laughed again when De Soto told how, when they shot at targets to amuse the Inca, the people showed their fear at the flash and roar of the powder, which seemed so like lightning and thunder from heaven.

Pizarro said if the Inca received them kindly and would be baptized and become a vassal to King Charles, he might continue to sit on the throne of the "Children of the Sun." But if he refused these demands, he, Pizarro, would sit on that high throne of gold as vicegerent for the king of Spain.

There was nothing to do, however, except to wait at Caxamalca until the promised visit.

The Indian king came in splendor. His dress was embroidered in gold. He wore a jeweled crown and a collar of emeralds. He sat in a litter carried by nobles of the highest rank; by his side walked two priests with the Sun embroidered in gold on their breasts, and before him and behind him marched companies of soldiers with nodding plumes and waving flags.

Now Pizarro had said to his priests that this Indian king must be baptized when he came, and they accordingly held up the cross as he approached.

When the Inca saw the Spaniards, so fair of skin, and the group of priests in long white robes, he whispered to his own priests: "Perhaps these strangers are messengers of the gods."

But the priests from the Temple of the Sun shook their heads.

One of Pizarro's priests told about God and about Jesus Christ, who had died on the cross to save men. He said the Peruvians should cease to worship the Sun and worship the one true God.

When the Inca asked the Jesuit where he had learned such strange things, he pointed to the Bible in his hand. The Inca took the Bible. He held it to his ear. Hearing no words he threw it from him in anger.

"I will be the friend of your king," he said. "But I will not pay him tribute. I shall not change my religion, either. If Christians, as you call them, adore a god who died on a cross, *I* worship the Sun, who never dies."

Pizarro and De Soto seized the Inca at these hasty words. They tore down the sacred banner from behind the litter. And then arose a great cry from the king and from his two priests of the Sun. They threw themselves prostrate to the earth, and they cried: "He has come! He has come!"

e Indian tradition
the white man

Now, not even the Inca's army knew what their king and priests meant by this. It had been a sacred tradition for hundreds of years, known only to the Inca, his oldest son, and the priests of the Sun, that one day a fair god would come who would seize the sacred banner and usurp the throne.

And now the emblem had fallen!

Guns boomed, horses reared and trampled some Indian guards under foot. In the end very few of the army that had come to Caxamalca escaped.

The Inca told Pizarro that if he would release him he should have silver enough to fill a large room and gold enough to fill half a room; and he sent messengers to Cuzco to order the treasure. Two thousand men were busy for days bringing vases and drinking-cups and altar pieces from the Temple of the Sun, and images, birds, fruits, and flowers, carved in gold in a most curious way.

death of the Inca

Meantime news came that another army was collecting to free the Inca. Pizarro ordered a great fire to burn the Inca who would not become a Christian. A Spanish priest asked that the Indian king might suffer an easier death if he would be baptized. After he had been baptized he was strangled.

Pizarro, with De Soto ever at his side, conquered

the Indian army which tried to avenge the death of their Inca. The Spaniards entered Cuzco, and found riches beyond their wildest dreams. They divided the treasure among themselves and the soldiers, and sent a fifth of it to King Charles.

Pizarro resolved to remain in Peru, to set the natives to work in the mines. He made Lima the capital of the conquered country, and thousands of Indian slaves built bridges at Lima, and walls with high towers, and temples for the worship of the Christian religion.

Pizarro founds Lima

De Soto, who was now very rich, sailed back to Spain on the ships that bore the king's treasure. He restored his father's castle to its old-time splendor. He had horses and coaches and a long line of servants to answer his call. He married Isabella, the beautiful daughter of Don Pedro de Avila, and lived like a prince at Seville. When he went to Valladolid, where King Charles held court, pages and lackeys preceded him as if he were a prince.

De Soto sails for Spain

Now all this time Spanish ships were bringing gold and silver from Mexico and Peru, and coffee, tobacco, dye-woods, and spices from the West Indies; but neither King Charles nor his nobles were content. They said there must be more gold mines and more spice lands in the vast unexplored regions of America. They talked most about a country northwest of Cuba, which Ponce de Leon, a friend of Columbus, called Florida. De Leon had traveled there while governor of Porto Rico to search for a "fountain of youth," which the Indians said would make an old man young. But although the venerable soldier bathed in many

1513
Ponce de Leon
discovers Florida

streams he had returned to Porto Rico as wrinkled and worn as ever.

De Soto governor of
Cuba and Florida

Fernando de Soto had not yet seen so many years that he needed to think of a cure for his age; but he wanted two things beginning with "g"—glory and gold. He thought he might find both glory and gold in Florida. King Charles accordingly appointed him governor of Cuba and Florida, which included all the north coast of the Gulf of Mexico, and stretched north, according to Spanish claims, to the banks of Newfoundland.

When it became known throughout Spain that Fernando de Soto, who had helped Pizarro conquer Peru, was fitting out an expedition to conquer Florida, young noblemen flocked to Seville to join him. De Soto accepted only those who were strong and trained in arms. Nearly all he enrolled were rich and well bred, and were dressed in armor and silk.

1538
De Soto sails for
Florida

1539
De Soto lands at
Tampa Bay

De Soto laid in a stock of guns and provisions and some cattle and hogs. He provided bloodhounds to hunt slaves, and chains to bind them, and white-robed priests to convert them. When everything was ready, ten ships sailed proudly from San Lucar. They stopped at Santiago de Cuba,¹ where De Soto left his wife to rule during his absence. Then he sailed for the Land of Flowers, and landed at Tampa Bay.

The horses were unloaded to bear the cavaliers on their search for golden cities like those of Peru. The live stock was let loose to run and multiply in the woods. To this day in the glades of Florida run long-

¹ See map, p. 241.

snouted wild hogs called "razorbacks," whose ancestors probably came over in De Soto's ships.

A few miles from Tampa Bay De Soto passed fields of maize and came at last to a large Indian village. The wooden houses, spacious and thatched with palm leaves, were very different from the rude huts of Cuba. Some houses had furniture which was carved and inlaid with bits of gold; and the floors and walls were covered with buckskin that shone like silk.

The Florida Indians

De Soto said much he saw reminded him of Peru, and that farther on they would surely find a rich city. He drew his men into line again. There were three hundred nobles on richly harnessed horses; then twelve priests in long robes, and four hooded monks, then six hundred men on foot, and a long train of slaves with the food and camp tools.

The march

They marched through the forests of Florida. They crossed rivers on rafts, they pushed through brush and fallen trees where Indians often lay in ambush to shoot them with arrows.

De Soto marched on and on through the wilds of Florida, always in search of gold. When he captured hostile Indians he put chains upon them and forced them to carry baggage, and build rafts, and fetch water for the horses.

Once an Indian princess floated down a river in a canoe. When the boat came to shore her chieftains carried her in a litter to De Soto's presence. She gave him presents of woven cloth and rare skins and a long string of pearls. But he seems to have feared

An Indian princess

that she was deceiving him into an ambush, and he made her a prisoner and kept her going about with him from place to place until she one day escaped.

Wherever De Soto went he found deserted villages. Whenever he captured a chief he would carry him to the next town as a hostage, hoping thus to avoid the attacks from the woods.

Once he came to a town where a chief lived who willingly allowed him to carry him off as he had carried off other chiefs; but, as it afterward proved, this chief was in a great plot to destroy the Spaniards.

When they reached the town of Mavilla (Mobile) the imprisoned man escaped and ran into a cabin. When De Soto ordered him to come out he only shouted back taunting words. Presently hundreds of painted warriors rushed upon the Spaniards. De Soto was wounded by an arrow, and many of his men were killed. The Indians were all killed but one, who hanged himself on a tree with his bow-string. The Spaniards claimed they had slain nearly three thousand Indians.

the attack at Mavilla



They wandered on from Mavilla in their mad search for gold mines.

One day about two years after landing at Tampa Bay they passed through a tangle of forests and swamps near the site of Memphis, Tennessee, and came to a broad river whose waters were almost as yellow as the

gold they sought. The current of the river was so swift that it carried whole trees as if they were feathers. No one of them had ever seen such a vast river, and they said it was rightly named the Mississippi, which means the "Father of Waters."

1541
The Mississippi
River

De Soto built rafts to cross the Mississippi. A sorry crew embarked for the opposite shore—very different from the steel-clad cavaliers who had sailed from San Lucar. Silks had worn to rags, and rags had been replaced by skins of wild beasts. The shining armor had rusted or had been thrown away on the march, and only a few remained of all the horses and men.

On the west bank of the Mississippi, De Soto built a cross so large that a hundred men could hardly lift it to its place, and he took possession of the land in the name of King Charles. The priests chanted a prayer while thousands of wondering natives looked on in amazement.

De Soto soon left the river, to wander on over prairies and hills. He nearly reached the mouth of the Missouri River; but nowhere did he find mines or cities like those in Peru. The climate was malarial, and his men were dying by scores, so he turned south again to try to reach the Gulf of Mexico. Perhaps he began, at last, to realize that he himself was more prized by his beautiful wife than any glory or gold he might find. Near the fork of the Red River and the Mississippi he was stricken with a fever. It was in the month of May. All nature was singing to his deaf ears, but he heard nothing. He muttered always the name, "Isabella, Isabella."

1542
Death of De Soto

The tribes around him were gathering their clans together to cut off his little band, but he knew it not. He babbled on about his wife and the castle in Spain which the gold of Peru had restored to its old-time splendor. When he died his sorrowing comrades sunk his wasted body at midnight into the bosom of the great Father of Waters, which he had found.



BURIAL OF DE SOTO

Ragged and shriveled and dressed in skins, the survivors of the expedition built boats and finally reached a Spanish settlement in Mexico.

And when, at last, two of De Soto's faithful friends arrived in Cuba with the tidings of his death, Isabella, the beautiful daughter of Pedro de Avila, died of a broken heart.

SIR FRANCIS DRAKE THE LORD OF THE SEA

1540-1596



FRANCIS DRAKE was born in ¹⁵⁴⁰ Francis Drake born England. England, you remember, was the country where the Columbus boys did not wish to live. But when Francis Drake's blue eyes first looked out upon that great sea-girt island a hundred years had passed, and a change had come over England as well as over all Europe.

The north countries of Europe had been growing richer and the south countries poorer. The valleys of the north had been found more productive than the worn-out lands to the south. The northern forests furnished timber for ship-building and charcoal for ore-smelting. And there were chimneys now for smoke, and glass for the windows of houses, so that the winters did not seem so severe.

The north and south countries of Europe



SIR FRANCIS DRAKE
1540 - 1596

England was very prosperous. To be sure, Spain was growing rich with her American mines and her West Indian trade, and Portugal was growing rich with her East Indian trade; but England was growing rich, too, from wool, which was produced in such quantities that weavers, dyers, and drapers from all over Europe were moving there to manufacture cloth.

England becomes a manufacturing country



And so, if Francis Drake had been allowed to choose for himself, he might have chosen to be born just where it is said he was—"in an old boat turned bottom side up on the sandy down of Tavistock" in Devonshire.¹

Francis soon went to Plymouth, close to the sea, where his father read prayers to the royal navy. The lad went to sleep to the songs of the sailors, he waked to the hammers of the shipwrights in the dockyards; and all day long he played among the masts and hulls of the warships that were rotting away in the harbor of Plymouth since the death of Henry the Eighth.

Francis Drake's
boyhood

His hair was short and curly, and his shoulders were very broad. His father was poor, but his kinsmen, the Hawkinses, owned half of Plymouth, and no boy in the town had more friends than Francis. When he cried: "Ahoy, me lads!" there was always a scrimmage among his companions to see who could reach him first.

With a band of trusty followers he explored the tideways of Plymouth Bay and the treacherous sand banks that shifted hither and thither along the beach; so that he learned early the sailor's art which would one day serve him so well.

When Queen Mary came to the throne, Mr. Drake lost his position of chaplain to the navy, because the queen was a Catholic and he was a Protestant. Perhaps the reader of prayers was content to be merely relieved from his office; many of his friends, and even some of his kinsmen, were relieved of their heads because of their Protestant faith.

1553
Queen Mary ascends
the throne

¹ See map, p. 62.

Francis became a politician. He divided his playmates into two factions; but he always took the part of a Protestant. If some of the lads consented to be Catholics there was great hanging or taking off of heads among the ship's rigging. When Francis was ten years old, Philip of Spain, who was a Catholic, came to England to marry Queen Mary, and the boy who played Philip in the games of Plymouth was once left to hang from a topmast until he was almost choked to death.

1554
Philip of Spain
arrives in England

When Francis was eleven he was apprenticed to the skipper of a small craft that sailed between England and the Netherlands.¹ Life in the channel was very severe; but the lad plied cheerily back and forth in fair weather and foul, and proved such a faithful companion that when the good skipper died he left him his boat.

Francis Drake
becomes a
shipowner



QUEEN ELIZABETH
1533-1603

1558
Queen
Elizabeth
ascends
throne of
England

And so Francis Drake, while still very young, traded with the Netherlands on his own account.

Meantime Queen Mary had died, and Elizabeth, who was a Protestant, came to the throne. Philip went back to Spain to become king of the richest country in Europe. Philip was cruel to his Protestant subjects in the Netherlands. Francis Drake carried

many of these oppressed people to England, and during the passage they told him such terrible stories about

¹ Now the separate kingdoms of Belgium and Holland. See map, p. 90.

the Spanish king that he sometimes clenched his fists and swore he would one day avenge them.

After a while he grew tired of coasting in the English Channel, and risked his hard-earned savings with his kinsman, Sir John Hawkins, in the slave trade. Sir John traded along the coast of Guinea, and Queen Elizabeth herself took shares in his business.

Sir John Hawkins

In those days it was thought a Christian's duty to bring negroes from the heathendom of Africa and place them in Christian homes. Sir John had been knighted by the queen for his success in the slave trade. His coat of arms had a chained negro's head for the crest.

1567
Francis Drake sails
for Africa

Sir John put Francis Drake in command of the *Judith*, and the fleet sailed merrily off for Africa. The ships were captured by the Spaniards, and young Drake barely escaped with his life. So he had something else laid up against King Philip.

Stained with travel and worn in dress he landed at Plymouth, and hurried post-haste to London to tell the queen's council of the Spanish attack. He related how Sir John and he had reached Africa safely, had loaded with slaves, and had sailed for the West Indies, where slaves were in demand on the cane, tobacco, and coffee plantations.

The return

They had not dared to trade openly, for Philip had issued an edict of death against foreign merchants; but Sir John had certain hiding-places where West Indians met him and purchased of their own free will. They had exchanged the slaves for gold, jewels, and dyestuffs, and were homeward bound when a Spanish fleet captured their ships.

Now Queen Elizabeth knew a great deal about the

West Indies and Spanish America. She was a young princess when Philip of Spain had come to marry her sister Mary. She had seen a parade in London—fifty Spanish nobles in velvet clothes and rich gold chains, and a hundred lesser Spanish gentlemen in black cloth barred with gold, and two hundred horses loaded with sacks of silver and gold from Spanish America.

The bright young eyes of Princess Elizabeth had seen all this, and hundreds of other eyes had seen it, and thousands of ears had heard about it, so that the riches of America, even in Queen Mary's reign, had been the theme of every tongue.

Martin Cortez

Elizabeth had talked very often with Martin Cortez, the son of the conqueror of Mexico, who was one of King Philip's pages and about her own age.

She had asked him all about Mexico, and about the Indians and the gold they were forced to dig from the great Mexican mines. Martin Cortez knew all about it; for he was born in Mexico, and had been in Europe only a year. Elizabeth said if she ever became queen she would send ships to America to hunt for gold. But Martin told her she had better not do that, for the king of Spain owned all the lands that lay along the Atlantic Ocean and all that lay on the Pacific Ocean, and his majesty put to death any foreigners who tried to trade there.

The young princess only nodded her head and set her pretty lips tight. She had her own ideas about matters and things even that early in life.

Now she was queen, with a whole court full of knights who would risk their lives for a smile. And

so when Francis Drake, all brown with the sea spray and western sun, came to London in breathless haste to tell the loss of the slave-ships, Queen Elizabeth, so it is said, saw him herself, and secretly planned an adventure.

Be that as it may, Drake sailed from Plymouth with three good ships. He knew that the gold from Peru was landed on the west coast of the Isthmus of Panama and was carried across country to the mouth of the Chagres River on the east coast. That was almost along the very route of our Panama Canal.¹

1572
Francis Drake sails
for the Isthmus of
Panama

Drake landed at the mouth of the river. He sent out spies, who presently returned aglow with great news. Two mule trains of treasure were coming, and in front of the train no less important man than the treasurer of Lima himself on his way to Spain with eight loads of gold and one load of rubies and pearls.

The little band of Englishmen waited. Mule bells were heard in the distance, jangling louder and louder as they drew near. Then out from the high grass leaped Drake and his men to transfer the treasure to the waiting ships.

And on a Sunday the good people of Plymouth heard a boom of salute and ran out of church to see Francis Drake ride into the bay.

1573
The return (Aug. 9)

Drake said not a word to a man in Plymouth. He exchanged his weather-stained clothes for velvet and lace, a jeweled cap, and a great gold chain, and then hurried to London to share his spoils with the queen.

Now King Philip had offered to marry Elizabeth,

¹ See map. p. 249.

and people said he would make war upon England because she refused him. So when the queen saw the vast booty which might have helped hire Spanish armies, she exclaimed: "'Tis the best way to prevent war with Philip!"

"Aye, 'tis better than powder, your majesty!" cried Drake. And because the queen smiled at these bold words he soon sailed away with the *Golden Hind* and four other ships to plunder the coast of Peru.

He passed through the West Indies, then south around Cape Horn. He captured Spanish treasure-ships amounting to millions of dollars. He plundered and burned Spanish settlements along the coast of Peru. Then he began to think about going home.

Now he knew very well that Spanish men-of-war were lying in wait at the Strait of Magellan. He accordingly sailed north, hoping to find a passage that would lead to the Atlantic Ocean.

He found no passage; but he cast anchor off the coast of California in a "fair and good bay," and so won the hearts of the natives that they wept when he set sail again.

He steered west over the Pacific Ocean and landed on one of the islands called "Philippines"¹ in honor of the king he hated so much. He passed through the Spice Islands to the Indian Ocean, and returned to England by way of the Cape of Good Hope, after an absence of nearly three years.

Drake was quickly summoned to court. He went with a long train of pack horses laden with spoils. He was brown in the face from the hot tropic sun,

¹ See map, p. 245.

577
e sails in the
n *Hind*

Philippines

580
e returns to
and

but he was not ashamed of that. He wore a gold inlaid corselet and a ruff of point lace, and looked every inch a soldier as he strolled in the garden of the palace by the side of the queen.

Elizabeth was charmed with her captain and what he had brought.

Drake fetched the *Golden Hind* to Deptford,¹ and gave a banquet on board to the queen, who then made him a knight. He chose for his arms the image of a small ship on a globe, because he had been the first Englishman who had "ploughed a furrow around the globe with his ship." And as Sir Francis Drake he was the hero of many a song.

1581
Francis Drake
becomes a knight

Meantime word came that King Philip had seized Portugal. Spain thus had a right to the trade of the East Indies as well as the West Indies.

1580
Philip of Spain
seizes Portugal

It certainly seemed as if discoverers, warriors, and seamen from every nation in Europe except England were toiling to build up the glory of Spain. And Philip would never rest content until England paid tribute, too.

He said that if he could not win England through marriage, he could conquer the kingdom with arms, and he began to equip a great fleet.



PHILIP II
1526 - 1598

Elizabeth knew how small and weak her kingdom was compared to the power of Spain; but the sea walled it in. In the sea lay her hopes. She began to build ships; and all the rich nobles on the coast built ships at their own expense.

¹ See map, p. 62.

Sir Francis Drake, who had greed for danger as well as for gold, said to himself he would "sing the king of Spain's beard."

He sailed from Plymouth. "'Tis the wind," he said, "and not the queen that commands us away. If we deserve ill, let us be punished."

He sailed to Cadiz,¹ where lay a hundred Spanish ships. He rifled; he scuttled; he sunk; he burned; he emptied out biscuits, flour, horseshoes, spurs, saddles, and pikes which had been put in store for the war with his queen.

Then he sailed for Lisbon,¹ where he burned a hundred more ships, and on his way home he captured a Spanish galleon from Calicut,² full of spices and gems.

King Philip kept on increasing his fleet, which he called the "Invincible Armada."

When at last the Armada put to sea the waters groaned with its weight. It entered the English Channel with silken pennants and sails, and a loud blare of trumpets and beating of drums.

And then from all the harbors of England glided the queen's ships.

Between Dover³ and Calais³ the fleets faced about. Night came. The moon hung full. The English launched fire-ships in a strong north wind. The Spanish ships scattered. The English spread sail. Sir Francis Drake, second in command but first in attack, hurled broadsides of solid shot. The masts

1587
Drake sails for
Cadiz and Lisbon



A SHIP OF THE SPANISH ARMADA

The defeat of the
Armada

¹ See map, p. 24.

² See map, p. 20.

³ See map, p. 62.

of the Invincible Armada were shattered, and the sails were torn to shreds. Three of the Spanish ships sunk in a howling storm. The rest of the ships, rocked by the sea and driven by the winds, scudded away. The English pursued until all that remained of the Invincible Armada was in full flight toward the north.

When the last sobs of the hurricane ceased the coasts of Norway, Scotland, and Ireland were strewn with the wrecks of the fleet that had failed to make England a province of Spain.

Sir Francis Drake had again "singed the king of Spain's beard." English seamen and warriors marched in triumph through the streets of London. The queen came out on horseback to meet them, with trumpeters, and councilors of state, and halberd men in scarlet cloaks. Thousands of people along the roadside gaped in wonder at the sight.

When Sir Francis advanced to kneel before the queen, all eyes were fixed upon the "Lord of the Sea." He was short, but broad of chest. His face was burned with many suns. His hair curled close to his shapely head, from which he had removed his headpiece. His eyes were blue like the sea he loved, and his beard was cut to a point. He wore a heavy chain of gold about his neck, and on the full sleeves of his doublet was the image of a small ship on a globe embroidered most curiously in silken thread.

The "Lord of the Sea"

"A fearful man to the king of Spain!" cried the throngs that pressed nearer to catch a glimpse of the hero.

After the great procession was over, Elizabeth

ordered feastings that lasted for days, with jugglers, dancing bears, and merry-go-rounds.

Meanwhile King Philip of Spain had shut himself up in the gloom of his palace. He published an edict that there should be no public mourning for the thousands of noble knights who had gone down in the Armada. Yet when a Portuguese merchant laughed over the shameful defeat he was hanged by the king's command. So it was said no one could either cry or laugh in his majesty's vast domains.

It was soon noised throughout Europe that Philip was equipping another Armada to bring England to terms.

"While the riches of the Indies continue," sighed Elizabeth, "King Philip thinketh he will be able to weary out all princes." And that royal sigh was quite enough for Sir Francis Drake, who still considered himself the one to make Spain's king draw tighter his purse strings.

Sir Francis Drake
plunders the Spanish
Main

He sailed to the Spanish Main;¹ he plundered the Panama coast; he landed in Venezuela, clanked his armor over the short Indian trail to Caracas, plundered churches and houses, and set sail again—all while the men of Caracas were hurrying down the long wagon road to the sea to find him.

"Hating nothing so much as idleness," he sailed to the West Indies and brought back to England a cargo of tobacco, potatoes, and sugar.

1595
Drake's last voyage to
the Spanish Main

Then he set out once more for the Spanish Main. He said he would cross the Isthmus of Panama, sack

¹ The waters along the north coast of South America.

Panama City, and be back with the wealth of Peru before Philip's new Armada could hoist sails for England.

He reached the coast of Panama; but—alas for the dreams of the sea-rover!—a pestilence spread through the ships. Sir Francis was among the first to feel the fever. On the last day, in delirious wrath, he rose from his bed, put on his armor, and called loudly for his musket and sword. He stood upright on deck, and with his dying breath roared defiance over the Spanish Main to King Philip and his ships.

1596
The death of Sir
Francis Drake

When he fell, his men, with white faces, performed the last sad rites. They carried the body a league to sea and buried it at night in the glare of a Spanish town they had put to the torch.

JOHN SMITH
THE FATHER OF VIRGINIA
1579-1631

1579
John Smith
born



JOHN SMITH was born in Willoughby¹ at a time when all England rang with the news of how Philip of Spain had seized upon Portugal, and thus held the trade of the East Indies as well as that of the West Indies.

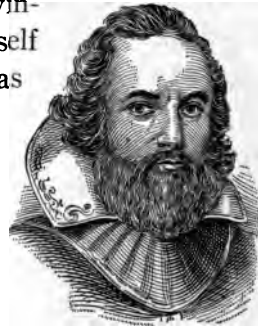
That same year all England boasted of how Sir Francis Drake had sailed around the world to bring Queen Elizabeth a shipload of plunder from Philip's mines in Peru.

Eight years after that all England was mad with joy over the destruction of the "Invincible Armada." John Smith himself may have seen the Spanish fleet as it staggered up the North Sea in full view of the Willoughby hills.

And so the lad began life in the midst of stirring events which seem to have continued to the end of his days.

At the age of fifteen he had lost both his parents and was apprenticed to Sir Thomas Sendall, the richest merchant of Lynn,¹ a bustling port on the east coast of England.

John Smith heard plenty of gossip from the sea-rovers who landed there, and from the clerks, in the big Sendall warehouse, who knew all about shipping.



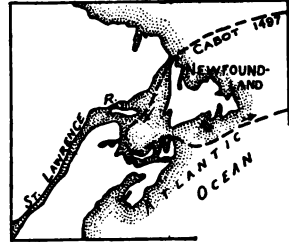
JOHN SMITH
1579 - 1631

1594
John Smith becomes
an apprentice

¹ See map, p. 62.

He heard among other things how King Henry the Seventh had once sent the Cabots to America—John the father, and Sebastian his son—to find a northwest passage to India; but that the Cabots had brought back only some big, gobbling birds, which they called “turkeys” because it was thought they came from the land of the Turks. John Smith knew by this time that Turkey was much farther off, and that the “turkeys” had come from North America.

1497
The Cabots reach
North America



He heard how King Henry the Eighth had sent two ships toward the North Pole to find a short way to China, and how one ship was lost, and the other had returned badly crushed by the icebergs.

He heard how Sir Hugh Willoughby had tried to find the passage; how his ships had been driven by storms into a harbor of Lapland, and Sir Hugh himself, whom many still living in Willoughby had known well, had been found sitting in his cabin, quite dead, with his pen between his frozen fingers.

1553
Sir Hugh Willoughby



SIR WALTER RALEIGH
1552 - 1618

Now everything the lad heard about a north passage to India sounded very forlorn indeed. But the stories about Sir Francis Drake, who was always “singeing the king of Spain’s beard” in the West Indies, and about Sir Walter Raleigh, who was sending ship after ship to a fair part of America called Virginia (in honor of Elizabeth, the Virgin Queen), set the heart of the young apprentice to beating fast.

When he worked in the warehouse the smell of the spices made him wish he might see the lands where they grew. When he strolled down by the wharves the sea kept calling him to be up and away like other brave lads who had won the queen's smiles.

John Smith begins his adventures

So John Smith quit his employer to search for adventures. He crossed the channel and tramped for a while through France. One day he rendered a service to a Scotch gentleman, who gave him letters to some noblemen that were powerful at the English court. But he decided he would not make use of the letters until he had won a name for himself. He went to the Netherlands and fought with the Dutch against the armies of King Philip.

A soldier in the Netherlands

He was a soldier two years. Then he went to Scotland with the letters, which by this time must have been rather musty. The noblemen to whom they were written offered to present him at court; but he said to himself that he would win his own way to court.

He returned to Willoughby, and in a neighboring forest he built a "faire pavilion of boughs." He had resolved to practice quite by himself until he became skilled in riding and fencing. He took to this forest retreat a horse, a servant, a lance, and some books.

He worked most of the day hurling the lance through a ring suspended from a limb; cutting off branches with his sword, and guiding his horse swiftly in and out of the forest as if the trees were enemies in battle array.

The boys of Willoughby soon flocked in such numbers to watch him that he grew tired of his play, and

went back into the world to practice his arms in real earnest.

He traveled through France to Marseilles, where he set sail with some pilgrims bound for the Holy Land. Such a wild storm broke forth when they were well out at sea that the pilgrims threw him overboard like Jonah of old. He escaped to shore on a log, and, after tramping through Italy, went to Hungary to try his fortunes against the Turks.

With pilgrims to the Holy Land

Smith goes to Hungary

The Christian army camped on a wide plain before a Turkish fortress. The governor of the fortress sent a polite messenger begging that before the Christians began the siege he would like to match one of his bravest knights against the choice of their army.

And who do you think was the champion chosen by the army of Hungary? It was Captain John Smith.

Heralds shouted. Drums beat. Out from the fortress gate came a Turk in great pomp, with one slave holding a horse and another a lance. Captain Smith, in plain clothes, sprang to horse with his lance.

The two champions leaped to the combat, while Turkish ladies on the ramparts above fluttered scarfs and waved white hands.

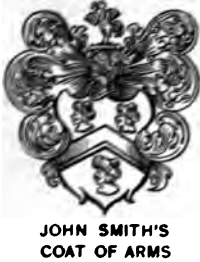
The combat

Now John Smith had not cut off tree branches at Willoughby for nothing. The Turk's head rolled to the ground in a trice. Loud shouts from both armies rent the air, but Smith sat his horse quite calmly.

A second Turk, and then a third, challenged to combat; but their heads, too, rolled in the dust.

This wonderful feat of arms greatly discouraged the enemy, who soon surrendered the fortress.

John Smith becomes
a knight



The Christians marched to the capital of Hungary; and when Prince Sigismund heard of the young Englishman's prowess, he granted him a patent of knighthood, with a coat of arms bearing three Turk heads.

The army marched to new victories. Captain Smith was always in the heat of the fray, until he was finally left for dead on the field and found by the Turks. He was sold as a slave and sent to Constantinople to a beautiful lady, who fell in love with him. To save the life of the handsome young Englishman the lady sent him beyond the Sea of Azof to her brother.

A slave of slaves

The brother, alas! riveted a great iron collar around his neck and treated him as a slave of slaves.

At last Smith escaped in his master's clothes. He traveled for weeks, always afraid that some one would see under his Turkish dress the iron collar which he could not remove. On the river Don a kind man filed off this badge of a slave, and so the captain was a free man once more.

He sought out Prince Sigismund, who remembered his services with a purse of gold.

Smith returns to
England

1603
King James I ascends
the throne of England

After many adventures, Smith reached England again, to find that Elizabeth was dead and King James the First was on the throne.

Now affairs in England were not very prosperous. The war with Spain was over, and thousands of soldiers were turning robbers for want of something better to do.

"These men must have employment," said King James, when he heard how the highways were not safe, even in daytime, for travelers to London.

Some of the merchants met to talk over the best means to provide the idle men with work. Nothing that any of them proposed seemed better than to plant colonies in Virginia as Sir Walter Raleigh had tried to do.

King James declared that by reason of the discoveries of the Cabots, England had a just claim to all the land between Nova Scotia and the Cape Fear River.

Since the whole region bore the name Virginia, he divided it into two parts. He gave North Virginia to some merchants of Plymouth, and South Virginia to some merchants of London, on condition that they would plant colonies there.

When John Smith reached home, the London Company was just fitting out an expedition to South Virginia, under command of Captain Christopher Newport, a gallant seaman who had been in the service of Sir Walter Raleigh.

John Smith found this proposed expedition quite to his taste, and well it was for the company that he did.

Three ships with a hundred and five men set sail from Blackwall¹ on the Thames. They passed down the coasts of France and Spain, then steered to the Canary Islands, and then to the West Indies, where they stopped a long time. The provisions were more than half gone when at last they sailed north.

A stiff gale drove the ships into Chesapeake Bay. They entered a river which was called the James, after "his most excellent majesty." About fifty miles from the mouth of the river the men in the three ships



JAMES I
1566-1625

North and South
Virginia

The London Company

1607
Smith sails for South
Virginia (Jan. 1)

¹ A suburb of London.

1607
Jamestown founded
(May 23)

landed and built a fort. This fort was the beginning of Jamestown, the first permanent English settlement in America.

The London Company were members of the Church of England, and had made very strict laws about church-going. The first church service was read under an old sail, with a plank nailed between two trees for a pulpit.

Very soon a rude cabin was built for a church, and about this clustered the dwellings, one by one, until some sort of a roof sheltered every man in the colony.

Most of the adventurers were gentlemen, which in those days meant men of gentle birth. Their hands were white, and, as it proved, their courage was of little account. They hoped to find gold in Virginia as De Soto had hoped to find gold in Florida, and, as you will see, but for the doughty John Smith, the best and truest man of them all, they might have suffered a fate like that of the Spaniards.

the search for gold

All the long summer the "gentlemen" sought gold on the banks of the James River. Now and then they pushed into the forests in search of cities like those of Mexico and Peru. But there were not any temples or palaces or mines or well-built roads—only deep, deep forests with now and then half-naked Indians creeping through the underbrush or skulking behind the trees to watch them in their useless search.

The store of food became so scarce that a man's daily portion was reduced to a half pint of mouldy wheat and the same amount of rye. As long as fish,

berries, and wild game lasted, there was no danger of starving; but knowing that winter must come, Captain Newport sailed back to England for more supplies.

The hot month of August bred disease. Sometimes three or four men died in a day. Captain Smith was never busier in his whole life. He nursed the sick, cheered the disheartened, and rebuked the unruly.

Disease

At last, in the dire need for food, he went up the James to buy corn and meat of the natives. The Indians had spied out the sad plight of the colony, and had little respect for such weakness.

"Here!" said the chief of a tribe. He held out a handful of corn to exchange for the little iron chisels and the beads Smith had brought. And all the warriors around him screamed with laughter and brandished high their clubs.

But Captain John Smith, who had three Turk heads on his shield, boldly seized the chieftain by the scalp-lock, set a pistol to his breast, and demanded corn with such fury that the warriors were soon scurrying about to fulfill his demands.

Smith finds food
among the Indians

As soon as affairs at Jamestown permitted, Smith started up the Chickahominy River. Because this river flowed from the west, he fondly hoped to follow its course to the great South Sea¹ Balboa had found. You know very well how very much awry Captain John Smith's geography was!

Explorations

The Indians along the bank of the river were wary and watchful. When he landed near a place now called White Oak Swamp, he was attacked by two

¹ The Pacific Ocean.

hundred red men in war paint. He killed two of the warriors, and might have escaped if he had not sunk into the swamp to his waist.

Powhatan

He was carried to many Indian villages, and at length reached the village of their emperor, Powhatan, who received him in savage state, and condemned him to die. According to Smith's own account, his head had been laid on a stone and several stout clubs hung ready to dash out his brains, when the Princess Pocahontas interceded to save him.

Pocahontas

The captain used all his skill to keep in favor at the Indian court. He amused Princess Pocahontas, who was about ten years old, with bells and beads and pretty things he whittled out of wood. He showed Emperor Powhatan a compass, and how the needle always pointed to the north star, so that the English hunter might make his way through trackless forests he had never seen before.

Powhatan had never seen a mariner's compass, and did not know what glass was. He tried to touch the quivering needle. He thought it was surely magic that he could not put his finger through what seemed mere air. In fact, the captain himself seemed so like some great magician who might bring good or evil at will to the red men, that he was soon allowed to go to his home.

Smith found the half-starved men of Jamestown preparing to sail back to England. He turned the guns of the fort on the leaders and gave them their choice to remain or die. They chose to remain. A few days later Pocahontas came with a band of Indians carrying baskets of corn.

The colony took heart again. Smith set every man to work at building more comfortable houses, clearing forests, and throwing up barricades—for he said he had small faith in this new friendship professed by the red men.

With the coming of spring he insisted that fields should be plowed for grain, and that a part of the game that was killed should be dried for future use. When everything was prospering he sailed up the Chesapeake, explored the Potomac and the Susquehanna Rivers, and drew a map of all the region—an admirable map which may be seen today.

1608
Smith's map of
South Virginia

In the autumn Captain Newport returned from England with the needed supplies and a hundred more men. The London Company had sent a crown for Powhatan, who was to be a vassal under King James, and with the crown came a bed, a basin, a pitcher, and a long scarlet robe.

Powhatan a vassal
of King James

Powhatan was highly pleased with the gifts and paraded about in his red robe to the envy of all the lesser chiefs; but he refused to kneel when he received the crown, so that Captains Smith and Newport had each to take a shoulder to force him down.

When the ceremony was over, Powhatan chose gifts to send back to King James—a pair of his moccasins and a blanket of raccoon skins.

Now either from the vast elevation to which this new crown had raised him, or from the fear that the white strangers who kept coming by shiploads would one day outnumber his warriors, the shrewd old chief planned to kill all the white settlers and burn down their houses.

Powhatan plots to
destroy Jamestown

While Captain Smith was on the York River with forty of his men, little Pocahontas crept through the darkness of the night and told him of the plot, so that he was able to frighten the chief into peace.

As spring drew near again the Jamestown cavaliers found a bank of shiny sand which they thought was gold. Precious spring months, which should have been spent in planting corn, were wasted in filling a ship with this worthless sand. Smith finally convinced the men of their folly, and loaded the ship with cedar posts, which brought a good price in England.

cipline enforced

Presently more adventurers came to Jamestown, but so many of these were worthless, idle gentlemen that the captain was forced to make this law: "He that will not work shall not eat."

The law was posted on the walls of the fort. The whole colony was soon very busy; but some swore so loudly over their bruised and blackened hands that Smith had a record kept, and a can of water was poured down the sleeve for each and every "swearword" a man uttered aloud.

1609
Smith returns to
England

Things prospered more and more at Jamestown until Captain Smith was wounded in the leg by an explosion of gunpowder and forced to go to England for medical aid.

He left behind him four hundred and ninety persons; three ships and seven boats; ten weeks' provisions in store; three hundred muskets; nets for fishing; tools for all sorts of work; horses, hogs, and chickens—a good beginning for the first English settlement in America.

Captain Smith did not return to Jamestown. But he never forgot the colony for which he had done so much. When he saw men in England out of work he urged them to go to Jamestown, not to hunt gold—he frankly said he believed there was no gold in Virginia—but to fell trees for ship-timber, and to prepare tar, pitch, and soap ashes, which brought good prices in Europe.

After some years Smith crossed the ocean again in the service of the Plymouth Company.¹ While the crews of his ships were catching and drying fish along the coast of North Virginia he explored the coast from the Penobscot River to Cape Cod, and made a map of it. He named all the region "New England." At one place on the map he wrote "Plymouth," after the town in England from which he had sailed. At another place, where a cape jutted out, he wrote Tragabigzanda, in memory of the Turkish beauty who had loved him. But the English people who afterward settled there must have found the name too hard to pronounce, for they changed it to Cape Ann.

1614
Smith goes to North
Virginia

The map of New
England

Smith's first voyage to New England was so successful that the following year he was sent again. Before he was well out to sea he was captured by a French man-of-war. One night he slipped down the side of the ship, cut loose a boat, and after tossing about on a wild sea reached the coast of England. He remained in England the rest of his life, spending most of his time writing books about New England and America. The books of Captain Smith were widely

The books of Captain
Smith

¹ See the grant to the Plymouth Company, p. 79.

read. They kept people thinking about planting colonies in America.

Smith never quite gave up the idea of planting another colony himself. Once he obtained promise of territory, ships, and the title of admiral; but nothing came of the project.

He passed the last years of his life in London. All the seamen down on the wharves of the Thames knew the limping old soldier with three Turk heads on his sleeve.

Tobacco

Once he saw two hundred poor boys from the streets and alleys of London shipped off for Jamestown—a chattering, dirty lot, who were to work on the tobacco plantations which his young friend John Rolfe had encouraged the settlers to cultivate until tobacco was one of the chief exports of Virginia.

John Rolfe

He heard many a bit of gossip down on the wharves from the incoming sailors—how thrifty young women had gone over to Jamestown to marry the planters; how the London Company had made even stricter laws than those he had once made; how the plantations had been divided into settlements called boroughs, with two burgesses elected from each, who were to help make laws for themselves.

Wives for
Jamestown
planters

Bur-
gesses
of
Virginia



POCAHONTAS

Perhaps the most delightful news that Captain Smith heard from Virginia was that Pocahontas had become a Christian, and had married John Rolfe.

1616
Pocahontas goes
to England

When Pocahontas went to London with her husband she visited the captain, which must have pleased

him, yes, and flattered him too; because the Princess Pocahontas was received at court, and was the talk of the fashionables of England.

Captain Smith regretted that he had not been able to plant a colony in New England. One day he heard highly exciting news. Some pious people who were not allowed to worship in England as they pleased had sailed, like "Pilgrims," in the *Mayflower* to plant another colony in America; but he could not find out just where they were going.

1620
The Pilgrims in the
Mayflower

A few months later he heard that the Pilgrims had landed in New England on the very bay he had marked "Plymouth" on his map. It seemed the hand of Providence.

The good captain watched eagerly for more news of the colony, and after a time he learned that another band of church people called "Puritans" had settled in New England at Salem, with honest, clear-headed John Endicott as governor.

1628
The Puritans
at Plymouth

The year before he died he heard how John Winthrop of Groton and one thousand Puritans had sailed to New England in eleven ships and had settled the towns of Dorchester, Roxbury, Charlestown, and Boston.

1631
The death of Captain
John Smith (June 2)

It was just what Captain John Smith, the father of Virginia and the explorer of New England, had written and worked to bring about.

MILES STANDISH
THE CAPTAIN OF PLYMOUTH
1584-1656

1584
Miles Standish
born in England



The Church of
England

The Catholics

The Puritans

MILES STANDISH was born in Lancashire, England, at Duxbury Hall, a square, brick mansion set in a park, with low hills off in the distance. A few miles to the west, at Standish Hall, lived his cousins, who were Catholics.

Miles' father probably belonged to the Church of England, which had separated from the Roman Catholic Church, with the ruler of England as its head instead of the Pope.

Queen Elizabeth hated the Catholics, who would not attend her church, but she hated still more the Puritans who went to the church but spent most of their time finding fault with it.

These Puritans thought too much money was squandered both for worship and for fine dress.

"Look ye," said one Puritan. "There's many a shilling gone up in that incense."

"The candles on the altar," said another, "and the gold candlesticks and all that mummery is not pleasing to God."

"They say," said another, "her majesty has two thousand dresses all decked out with jewels and lace. 'Tis vanity! All is vanity!"



MILES STANDISH
1584-1656

"Have ye heard," asked another, "how 'tis said Sir Walter Raleigh once spread his new velvet coat in the mud for her majesty to step on? 'Twas a sinful waste, and a bad example to set for our spendthrifts."

And so these Puritans kept finding fault day in and day out until the queen quite lost patience. Some were fined, some were set in the stocks, and some were thrown into prison where many of them died from hunger and cold.

Little Miles Standish knew Puritans whenever he saw them. They wore sober gray clothes of plain cut. They never swore nor stopped at the alehouse, and they looked so solemn that he was a bit afraid when they crossed his path in the woods of Duxbury Hall.

As for himself, he found the Church of England quite good enough. He loved to see the pomp of the bishop in his long robes, and to sniff the sweet incense, to hear the chants of the choir boys, and to watch the candles shimmer like stars in the gloom of the great church.

He knew, too, that those who favored the queen's religion were pretty sure to get along in the world, and he had some notion of being a soldier.

When Miles Standish was still in his teens he was made a lieutenant in the army, and went with a red-coated regiment to the Netherlands to help the Dutch in their war with Spain.

He was small in size, but wiry and quick—"a little chimney, and heated hot in a moment." He soon became a favorite with his commander, Sir Thomas

Punishment of the
Puritans



A PURITAN

1602
Lieutenant Miles
Standish goes to the
Netherlands

Vere, a giant of a man with a great brown beard shaped like a spade.

Lieutenant Standish took his part in assaults and sorties and ambuscades. He dulled his good sword in his thrusts and his parries. More than once his helmet and breastplate were dented by the big-whiskered Spaniards. Sometimes he waded to the top of his stout Cordovan boots in the deep, country marshes; sometimes he yawned the hours away in some placid Dutch town where the streets were canals and storks flapped lazily to and fro among the high-gabled roofs of the houses.

When peace came at last to the Netherlands, Captain



Miles Standish started out to see something of the country he had helped to set free. He found it a curious region—just a stretch of coast land built upon a vast number of canals formed from sluggish, oozy rivers that emptied into the North Sea.

He finally rambled into Leyden which was said to be the most beautiful city in the Netherlands.

The water-streets of Leyden were shaded with linden trees and crossed by more than a hundred bridges, and its university was famous all over Europe.

About the first person Captain Standish saw was a man in sober gray dress. He knew right away it must be one of those Puritans he had dreaded to meet.

in the Duxbury woods when he was a wee bit of a lad; but he was glad enough to meet anyone from good old England.

He found that quite a number of Christians who had separated from the Church of England had moved to Leyden. They were called Separatists in England, but they called themselves Pilgrims, because they had traveled so far to worship.

Separatists

When the Reverend John Robinson, who was the minister of the Leyden church, asked Standish to make himself at home with his countrymen, the captain was glad enough to take off his stiff corselet and lay by his musket and sword for a rest.

John Robinson

The young soldier may have smiled at first over the prim, devout lives of the Pilgrims; but he stayed on with them week after week. Some say dainty little "Rose" was the real cause of the captain's long rest. However that may be, he made the pilgrim Rose his wife, and then seems to have decided to bide with his new friends, though he never joined their church.

Several of the Pilgrims had been personages of importance in England. William Brewster had been at Queen Elizabeth's court, William Bradford had left large estates, and so, too, had Edward Winslow, who belonged to one of the best English families.

William Brewster
William Bradford
Edward Winslow

Captain Standish began a friendship at Leyden with William Bradford and Edward Winslow, who were about his own age, which endured for the rest of their lives.

He heard from Elder Robinson the story of the Pilgrim wanderings; how they had established a little

King James I
persecutes dissenters

church of their own at Scrooby¹ in Nottinghamshire, but had been persecuted so much by the bailiffs of King James that they had been obliged to leave the dear fatherland. Elder Robinson said it was hard to get along in this land that had been picked bare by the king of Spain's troops. His own son had been obliged to become a ribbon weaver to keep the wolf from the door. Yet even while the good elder was telling the sad story, he paused, now and then, to praise God for leading them to a land where a man's conscience was his own.

The Pilgrims remained at Leyden several years after Miles Standish came among them. Perhaps the little captain was the first to talk about moving to America; for the humdrum life of Leyden must have wearied him very much. It is pretty certain that William Bradford and Edward Winslow were always ready to argue against remaining longer in a place where so many members of the congregation found it difficult to earn their daily bread.

The older men listened to these younger ones all the more willingly in that they saw their sons taking Dutch wives and their grandchildren learning the Dutch language. They were true Englishmen at heart and wished their families to remain English.

Yet where should they go in America? They heard that the Jamestown colony forced all its members to belong to the Church of England; so that it would be as difficult to have their own worship in Virginia as it had been in England.

¹ See map, p. 62.

Presently they heard that some Dutch had settled on the Hudson River near a region John Smith had called New England, and that they were prospering in the fur trade.

The Dutch on the Hudson River

Elder Robinson wrote to friends in England for John Smith's pamphlet about New England.

In the end it was decided that the youngest and strongest of the congregation should go to America to prepare the way for them all, and John Carver was accordingly sent to England to arrange for the voyage.

When everything was made ready the Pilgrims met together for the last time at the home of Elder Robinson. Those who were to depart loaded their belongings upon a canal boat, and the whole congregation went to Delfts Haven,¹ where the *Speedwell* was waiting.

As the sails of the ship swelled to the wind they all knelt on deck. Elder Robinson offered up prayer. Tearful farewells were uttered, and the *Speedwell* was soon on its way to England.

At Southampton² a hundred and two of the youngest and strongest embarked on the *Mayflower*. We may be sure Captain Miles Standish, William Bradford, and Edward Winslow were among them. John Alden was there too—tall and handsome, with light curls and keen blue eyes, the very youngest of all the young men.

After a stormy voyage, lasting over nine weeks, the ship dropped anchor off Cape Cod,³ which Captain



THE MAYFLOWER

1620
The *Mayflower* sails
from Southampton
(Sept. 16)

¹ See map, p. 90.

² See map, p. 62.

³ See map, p. 95.

Smith had written was "shaped like a sickle" and was a flat, well-wooded coast.

The signing of the
Pilgrim constitution
(Nov. 21)

Before landing, the "Pilgrim Fathers" met in the cabin of the *Mayflower* to write out some laws by which they agreed to govern themselves.

You can almost see them in the close little room. On the table lay the paper. The world had never seen or heard of such a paper before. It was not written by kings or nobles for their own selfish ends. It was a *constitution*, written by the people for the people. It was really the very beginning of that great constitution of the United States under which we are living today.

John Carver, first
governor of Plymouth

John Carver, who had been elected governor, stepped to the table and set his name to the paper.

William Bradford

William Bradford signed his name, then Edward Winslow and William Brewster.

Edw. Winslow

After one other had signed, Miles Standish, who had been elected captain-in-chief, stepped up with the pen—

Myles Standish

Short of stature he was, but strongly built and athletic,

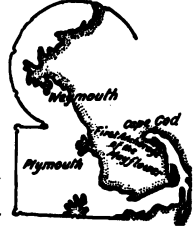
Broad in the shoulders, deep chested, with muscles and sinews of iron.

The very next one was John Alden, looking like a big schoolboy, yet old enough and lovable and brave enough to be numbered with the best.

When all the men had signed this agreement to make and to obey whatever laws might be for the good of the colony, some of the men helped the women go ashore to wash the linen. Although the weather was so severe that the sea spray froze on their clothes,

you may be sure as many of the larger boys and girls as were allowed got to shore too. They carried water and kindling wood, and looked for shells, and shouted into the pine trees as loudly as they dared, for they were afraid that they might call out Indians like those seen by John Smith when he had landed at that place.

Meanwhile Captain Standish, with a band of armed men, set out to explore the region. In sleet and a freezing gale he found at last a place which Smith had marked "Plymouth" on his map.

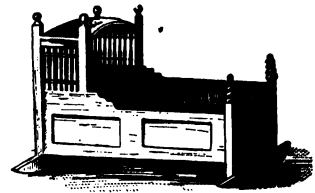


MAP OF PLYMOUTH

Here the Pilgrims landed. They cleared away snow drifts, cut logs, and began to build houses. First they erected a large house for all; then they built separate houses for family use, and a meeting-house with a cannon on a platform to protect them from hostile Indians. They mixed straw and mud together for a mortar and built wide stone fireplaces with iron spits and hooks on which kettles were hung for cooking; and piled up plenty of pine knots for light after dark.

1620
The landing at
Plymouth (Dec. 21)

They brought from the *Mayflower* arm chairs and wooden settles, high-posted beds, cradles, dishes, spinning wheels, clothes chests, and other useful furniture.



A PURITAN CRADLE

The first house set up was soon used as a hospital. Sometimes two or three of the Pilgrims were laid under the snow in a day. At one time only seven men were able to take care of the sick. The tenderest of these nurses was the fearless captain, with William Bradford always at his side. By the end of February thirty-one of the hundred and two Pilgrims had died; among them was gentle Rose Standish.

Disease and death

There was always danger from the Indians. Once while the men were felling trees, a shower of arrows had fallen from an ambush. But no red men ventured near until early spring, when a half-naked Indian walked boldly into the town.

"Welcome," he said, with a smiling face.

iamoset

It was Samoset, who had learned a few English words from fishermen off the coast of Maine. Samoset became a true friend. He acted as a messenger for Massasoit, who lived at Mount Hope, about forty miles southwest of Plymouth.

Massasoit was chief of an Algonquin nation.¹ He himself, with sixty warriors in furs, feathers, and paint, came presently to pay a visit.

Governor Carver was not quite sure whether the chief was coming as a friend or as a foe. He accordingly decided to make a fine show of arms, without using them except in case of need.

Edward Winslow, unarmed, advanced into the woods to meet Massasoit. Captain Standish, in his coat of mail, with six men in corselets, headpieces, and muskets, greeted the chief at the edge of the town and escorted him with ceremony to one of the houses, where he seated him on a rug. The captain, his small, shining figure drawn to its full height, then withdrew to fetch the governor. Drums beat, trumpets blew, the cannon on Fort Hill boomed, and all the able men in the colony marched in step into the room where the chief sat on a rug.

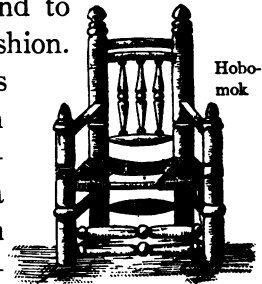
1621
Massasoit makes
peace

Massasoit, much impressed by this fair display, made oath to keep peace, and he never broke his pledge.

¹ The Wampanoags. See map, p. 102.

Squantum, too, who had been to England in a trading vessel and spoke English very well, came to Plymouth. He taught the Pilgrims to plant corn when the oak leaves were as big as a mouse's ear, and to stalk game, and to fish with spear heads, Indian fashion.

But of all the friendly Indians, Hobomok was the one who pinned his perfect faith to Captain Standish. Hobomok, a stalwart, powerful warrior, followed the little captain around as a faithful dog follows his master, and taught him the Indian language and the secrets of the American forests.



JOHN CARVER'S CHAIR

In April the *Mayflower* hoisted sail, but not one of the Pilgrims was willing to give up the new hope in his heart, so that only the regular crew returned to England.

1621
The *Mayflower*
returns to England
(April)

The day after the ship sailed Governor Carver died; his wife, worn-out with hardships, died soon after and was laid at his side.

Death of Governor
Carver

When William Bradford was chosen governor, he depended more than ever upon Miles Standish and Edward Winslow.

William Bradford
becomes governor

He sent Winslow to present Massasoit with a red coat and a copper chain for his neck. This was the beginning of many visits to Mount Hope. After one of the visits Massasoit volunteered to accompany Winslow home. He walked very slowly through the forest. As they neared Plymouth a sound of weeping was heard. The Pilgrims were standing in groups, talking in subdued tones. Shouts of joy burst forth at sight of Edward Winslow. Captain Standish himself was the first to wring his hand.

And Massasoit, the odd old fellow, explained that he had sent messengers ahead, Indian fashion, to say that Winslow was dead, so that the rejoicing might be greater when he arrived sound and well.

Not all of the Indians were so friendly as Massasoit. onicus Canonicus, chief of the Narragansetts,¹ thought the Pilgrims were taking too much hunting-ground. He tied a rattlesnake's skin around a bundle of arrows and sent it as a threat to Plymouth. Captain Miles Standish was not frightened a bit. He advised Governor Bradford to return the skin filled with powder and shot, and thus the chief was frightened into peace.

The Plymouth captain mustered the men every day at the beat of a drum. His sharp word of command, his look of approval, or his swift rebuke had unfailing effect. On the Lord's Day he drew his band into line and escorted Governor Bradford and the women and children to the meeting-house, which had a flat roof with a cannon perched upon it. Elder Brewster "prophesied" while the men sat with their muskets beside them.

There were few women left after the long winter's sickness. One of the fairest of these was Priscilla Mullens, whose father and mother and brother had died. Captain Standish had watched Priscilla—

spinning and spinning,

Never idle a moment, but thrifty and thoughtful of others.

John Alden, the youngest man in Plymouth, had watched Priscilla too. He had taken one special seat in the meeting-house where he could see her fair face;

¹ See map, p. 102.

He helped her with her chores during the week days; he brought her sweet wild flowers from his log-cutting in the forest.

And so when blunt old Captain Standish, his best and truest friend, told John Alden that his soldier's courage failed him in the presence of a maiden, and asked him to help induce Priscilla to change her name to Standish, the young lover was very much troubled indeed.

John Alden had always obeyed his captain, and he said to himself he would not fail him now, whatever the cost.

He went straight to Priscilla, who sat at her wheel. He blurted out that he carried an offer of marriage from Miles Standish, the captain of Plymouth.

Now Priscilla had all these months been shyly noting the splendid, boyish John Alden. She had kept his image as fresh in her heart as she had kept his flowers. At first she listened with a pale face to the swift praise of his captain—in his haste to get over the task he hardly knew how fast he was talking—and presently she said with a blush:

“Why don't you speak for yourself, John?”

John Alden, without a word, rushed from the room to wander for a time by the sea, before he could face his captain.

Word came that Indians were about to attack Weymouth, an English settlement about twenty miles north of Plymouth, on Massachusetts Bay. These Weymouth settlers were not Pilgrims. They belonged

The courtship of
Miles Standish



A SPINNING WHEEL

Weymouth

to the Church of England and had come to America to trade in furs. They were idle and roving; their clothes were worn to rags; they had begged from their red neighbors. All in all they had been so good for nothing that the Indians plotted to destroy them.

Right in the midst of the love tangle over Priscilla, Hobomok brought news of the plot against Weymouth. The stalwart Standish buckled on his steel and with eight resolute men sailed away for the new settlement.

It is a long story how after many days the captain returned with the grisly head of an Indian chief, which he set as a warning over the fort. And it is a pretty story, told by Longfellow, how the colony heard he had been killed by some Indians, and how, thinking himself free, John Alden had just married Priscilla Mullens when the doughty captain returned to give them his blessing.

Merrymount

After all there was much for the captain of Plymouth to do. He went to Merrymount to break up a settlement of wild young Englishmen who were selling guns to the Indians. The half-drunken fellows defied "Little Captain Shrimp" to do his worst. But their leader was carried to Plymouth to be shipped back to England, with only one tipsy Merrymounter wounded on the nose.

The captain of Plymouth kept Hobomok at his side wherever he went. The little white man in his bright coat of mail and the tall red man in his blanket were always chosen to explore and survey the Indian lands that were bought, to trade with the Indians, and, to settle disputes with them.

Standish moved to a country seat which he called Duxbury after Duxbury Hall in England. His home was near the bay, in full sight of Plymouth. Hobomok dwelt in a wigwam down by the beach for a time, and later brought his blanket and kettle, his arrows and bow, to the house, where he lived the rest of his days.

Now and then from his quiet retreat Standish visited the English settlements along the Massachusetts coast. Many Puritans had come to New England since the Pilgrims had pointed the way. They had settled Salem, with honest, clear-headed John Endicott as governor; they had planted the towns of Dorchester, Roxbury, Charlestown, and Boston. And all these towns had united under the name of the Massachusetts Bay Colony, with John Winthrop for governor.

Standish may have sailed around Cape Cod to visit Hartford, on the Connecticut River, and Saybrook, at the mouth of the river, and New Haven—all settled by the Puritans. He must have visited Providence, Rhode Island, too; for it had been founded by the Baptist preacher, Roger Williams, who was a great friend of Massasoit and Hobomok and often visited at Duxbury.

The Plymouth captain must have rejoiced when he read the letter from Massachusetts Bay asking the Pilgrims to join the Puritans at Boston in forming a union for mutual protection.

He favored Edward Winslow for delegate to the convention, and Edward Winslow was chosen at the town meeting.

1632
Captain Standish
moves to Duxbury



JOHN WINTHROP
1588 - 1649

Salem
Dorchester
Roxbury
Charlestown
Boston

Hartford
Saybrook
New Haven
Providence

1643
The first New
England union

Do you not like to believe that when Winslow returned from Boston he went straight to Duxbury to talk it over with his captain, and that William Bradford dropped in, and that the three staunch friends sat together—perhaps with Hobomok in a nearby corner half understanding what they said?

Edward Winslow told how Massachusetts Bay, Connecticut, New Haven, and Plymouth, after a month of hard work, had formed a union which they called "The United Colonies of New England." Two representatives from each of these colonies were to meet in a congress once every year. They were not to meddle with one another's private affairs; but were to decide matters of general interest, such as the declaration of war, treaties of peace, raising revenues, and levying troops.



These three friends must have thought of the paper they had signed together in the cabin of the *Mayflower*—the very beginning of self-government in America. But they could not know that this New England union for self-government would lead to still another union, greater than it was within the power of man then to believe—the union of the United States of America.

One day news came that England was at war with her old friend the Netherlands, and that English ships were under sail to attack the Dutch settlements along

1655
War with the Dutch
threatened

the Hudson River. "The United Colonies of New England" called for troops to aid in the war.

Miles Standish, still the captain-in-chief of Plymouth, buckled on his armor and reached for his musket and sword. He drilled his men, and was waiting for orders **when** news came that a treaty of peace had been made.

That same year Edward Winslow died at sea. The following year Captain Miles Standish ended his busy life at Duxbury. And before the close of another year William Bradford died. Winslow, the diplomat of Plymouth, Standish, its soldier, Bradford, its historian—all three of these men helped to found New England, and perhaps most gratitude is due to the hot-tempered, kindly captain of Plymouth.

1655
Death of
Edward Winslow
1656
Death of Miles
Standish
1657
Death of William
Bradford

PETER STUYVESANT
THE LAST DUTCH GOVERNOR
 1607-1672

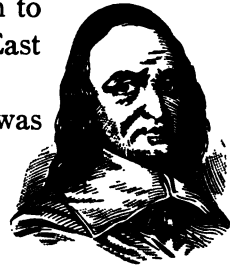


PETER STUYVESANT was born in a small town in Friesland.¹ Friesland was a province of the Netherlands—just a stretch of coast half drowned in the German Ocean. Indeed, Friesland would have been quite washed away if the thrifty Dutchmen who lived there had not built dykes of mud, stones, and sticks, as the beaver builds its dam, and set up windmills with whirring wings to pump the water out.

Peter's father was a clergyman who spent more time with the things of heaven than with those of earth, and his family sometimes went hungry.

The good dominie apprenticed the lad to a merchant in his town. After a time he sent him to Amsterdam¹ in the service of the East India Company.

Amsterdam, on the Zuyder Zee, was called the Venice of the North.² Its streets were canals lined with tall warehouses, from which flat-bottomed boats sped back and forth on the seas like shuttles weaving a network of trade.



PETER STUYVESANT
 1607 - 1672

At first Peter unloaded boats, pushed wheelbarrows,

¹ See map, p. 90.

² See description of Venice, p. 14.

The East India
 Company
 Amsterdam

and rolled casks; but his strong, eager face and manly ways soon won him a place in the counting-house. Here he often had a glimpse into the books of the East India Company, with long lists of many curious drugs and spices. The name he liked best was *kruidnagel*. That was the Dutch name for clove. Just five islands in the East Indies produced that little brown spice. The Persians, the Arabs, the Chinese, and the Japanese had all, at one time or another, struggled for possession of the islands. Sometimes a single cargo of cloves had cost a thousand lives. Finally the Portuguese secured the good will of the natives. Then King Philip of Spain seized Portugal's trade routes.¹ And then the Dutch East India Company outsailed the Spaniards to carry off the clove trade.

The clove

It was a real delight to Peter to see *kruidnagel* in the shipping list of the East India Company. He was always glad when his countrymen got the better of the Spaniards. Spanish kings had sent army after army into Friesland. They had burnt towns, and they had drowned towns by opening dykes, until the hardy Dutch joined arms with the English and set up a republic called "The United Netherlands."

Spanish armies in the Netherlands

After the political war with Spain was over, a trade war was begun. Peter Stuyvesant longed to try his hand at giving the Spaniards a lesson or two. While still very young he took service in the West Indies, and neither his tongue nor his sword ever rusted for want of use. He pleased his company so well that he was made governor of Curaçoa, an island in the Caribbean Sea, where the Dutch had a trading station.

Stuyvesant goes to the West Indies

¹ See Sir Francis Drake, p. 69.

Stuyvesant returns to
Amsterdam

Governor Stuyvesant led expeditions against his Spanish and Portuguese neighbors until he was once wounded so badly that he returned to Amsterdam for medical aid. His leg was cut off, and the loss was supplied with a wooden leg, trimmed with silver bands.

Stuyvesant had made both friends and enemies in Curaçoa. His friends wrote home that he had shown Roman courage in his last battle. But his enemies wrote that "stiff-necked Peter" had carried on with such bluster that the powder was gone before the Portuguese ships had come within gunshot.

The brave soldier stamped down all opposition, with his wooden leg. He married Judith Bayard, a French lady of high social rank, and said he was again quit ready for some new undertaking.

1609
Henry Hudson
discovers the Hudson
River

Now Henry Hudson, in the service of the East India Company, while trying to find a short cut to India had discovered a broad river in North America where Indians would sell beaver skins for just nothing at all.

The West India
Company

Furs were much used in the cold, stoveless countries of Europe and they brought a good price. Dutch merchants found the Hudson River so profitable that they organized the West India Company to trade with the Indians on a large scale.

The States-General

The States-General (the government of the United Netherlands) claimed a right to the country because of Hudson's discoveries. They accordingly called it New Netherlands and granted to the West India Company all the land between Delaware Bay and the Connecticut River.¹ Fort Orange,¹ where Albany now

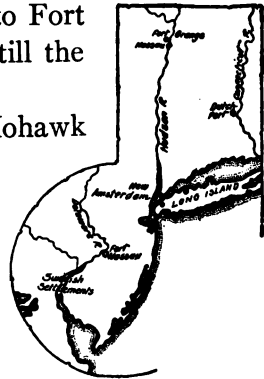
¹ See map, p. 107.

stands, was settled. Brooklyn, on Long Island, and New Amsterdam, on Manhattan Island, where the company's governor lived, and many other thrifty trading posts flourished amazingly.

The company's agents made friends with the Iroquois¹ who dwelt along the banks of the Mohawk River and the south shore of Lake Ontario. They carried trinkets, hatchets, beads, and blankets to Fort Orange and piled them up in the fort, to wait till the Iroquois came with their pelts.

A long line of canoes would come down the Mohawk to near its mouth. The Indians and their squaws then carried their packs of furs down a narrow trail to the fort where they chattered and yelped until everything was sold, to the great profit of the Dutch.

The West India Company heard how French traders were settling the country north of them and how English Puritans were pushing their colonies toward the Connecticut River. They knew if they kept possession of New Netherlands they must increase the Dutch population. The company accordingly offered large tracts of land to stockholders. Whoever established a colony of fifty persons in New Netherlands, had the right to purchase from the Indians sixteen miles of land along one bank of a river, or eight miles along opposite banks. He was to farm his land through tenants like the patroons (lords of the manor) in the fatherland. The patroon on the Hudson might trade in everything except furs and fire-



NEW NETHERLANDS

The patroons

¹ See Hiawatha, p. 6.

arms, which the company reserved for their own profit.

Killian Van Rensselaer and other Dutchmen of wealth planted colonies along the upper Hudson. Farms were laid out, trim little huts clustered around the great mansions of the patroons, and for a while everything in New Netherlands prospered.

Meantime the fur ships of the West India Company plied continually past the farm lands. The profits of the company set the patroons to thinking how fine it would be to trade in furs on their own account, though they knew very well such trade was against the law.

The patroons trade
in furs

They exchanged a few blankets for some beaver skins; these they sent to Europe with such profit that they exchanged a few more. In the end the patroons openly defied the company's governor who lived in New Amsterdam, at the mouth of the river. They even sold guns to the Indians, which was breaking another law.

War with the Indians

Some Indians from the Connecticut River, armed with the patroon's guns, swooped down on New Amsterdam to burn, kill, scalp, and hurry away.

The good burghers sent such constant complaints to the company that one governor after the other was called home in disgrace.

William Kieft

About the time Peter Stuyvesant came back to the Netherlands with a wounded leg, the governor of New Netherlands was William Kieft. Kieft was a quarrelsome, fussy, sharp-nosed little man, who mixed himself up in everything without bringing any order. He had no control over the haughty patroons. He quarreled with the Puritan English along the Connecticut River

He angered the Iroquois so that they threatened to dig up the hatchet they had buried under the Dutch church.

Finally the complaints of the good burghers grew so loud against Governor Kieft that the company ordered him home.

Who could force the patroons into obedience, build up the fur trade, and make friends with the rival colonies?

The West India Company met many times in the great guildhall of Amsterdam to discuss what man might mend their fortunes.

"Why not try Stuyvesant?" asked someone at length.

"The very man!"

"'Stiff-necked,' gentlemen, 'stiff-necked!' Those are the very words from Curaçoa."

"Aye, but 'tis a stiff neck needed to bring those patroons to terms!"

"Stuyvesant's as brave as a lion; even his enemies say that."

There was talk, talk, talk, and a vast deal of smoke from long pipes before a paper was signed making Peter Stuyvesant the governor who should succeed William Kieft.

Stuyvesant appointed
governor of New
Netherlands

Across the ocean hurried the news that Peter Stuyvesant, who had won victories in the West Indies, was coming. When his fleet drew near, all New Amsterdam was down at the Battery to greet him. Even some patroons from the upper Hudson were there to look the new governor over.

The patroons had driven into town in coaches-and-

four. They wore velvet and gold lace, with swords at their sides and curled wigs topped by broad, pointed hats. The common people drew a little apart at sight of these very grand personages. They no more thought of assuming such dress than private citizens today think of strutting about in a general's gold epaulets. The common people wore stout shoes, coarse stockings, baggy trousers to the knee, and their hair pasted flat. Their wives, the good *vrouws*, wore short skirts and kerchiefs, and their boys and girls, bunched solemnly together, with sideways stares at the splendid patroons and "patroonesses," looked quite like make-believe grown-ups.

And so this Dutch crowd waited at the Battery for the governor, with here and there a blanketed Indian as curious as any to see the new chief.

The new governor
arrives at New
Amsterdam

Guns from the crumbling fort boomed, drums beat, a trumpeter blew a blast, a squad of soldiers presented arms, and the governor stepped ashore.

He was in his regimentals. His coat was brass-buttoned from chin to waist, with its skirts turned up at the corners. His yellow breeches, his wig stiff with oil, his wooden leg in its silver bands, his shapely left shoe with a ribbon rosette, his gold-headed cane, his bright-hilted sword, all created a very profound impression as he stumped to the Battery from the boat.

People shouted themselves hoarse and threw up their caps. Orange flags waved, guns boomed again. And then the new governor proceeded with rather a lofty air to the fort.

Stuyvesant began a reform in New Amsterdam

He set up placards that drunkenness and sabbath-breaking must cease, and that cattle and hogs must be fenced up or pastured. He ordered houses set back from the streets on a line. He organized a fire brigade. He established a ferry across the East River. He wrote to the company for schoolmasters to teach the children.

Reforms

When he had reduced the town to something like order, he sailed up the Hudson to Fort Orange, hauled down the flag of Patroon Van Rensselaer and hoisted the colors of the West India Company. Then he summoned the Iroquois to a council to see that the flag was up. And his wooden leg with its silver bands struck such awe in the hearts of the warriors that they promised to bury the hatchet deeper than ever under the little Dutch church.

He went in state to Hartford, Connecticut, to settle the boundary line between the Dutch and the English. He organized a government for New Amsterdam—burgomaster (mayor), schout (sheriff), and schepens (aldermen). He gave the people of the whole province the privilege of choosing representatives to confer with himself and his council.

The Dutch and the English

The board did not always agree with their governor. Some called him "Hard-koppigge Piet" (Headstrong Peter), and some scoffed at "Old Silver Leg." But the affairs of the colony flourished amazingly under his rule.

Meantime a naval war had broken out between England and the Netherlands. News came that four English ships had reached Boston to take on New England troops to attack New Netherlands, and that

War with New England threatened

Captain Miles Standish¹ of Plymouth was rallying his men with the rest.

It was Peter Stuyvesant's first chance to fight since he lost his leg. He set all able men to work. He built a stockade on the land side of New Amsterdam.² He strengthened the fort toward the water side and was just ready to say to the English, "Come on!" when peace was patched up between the two fatherlands.

Years went by. The West India Company grew richer and the towns of New Netherlands prospered.

The good burghers built houses of wood with high-gabled ends of black and yellow brick. There were no storks' nests on the roof-tops as at home, but there were sure to be weathercocks that turned with all the giddy winds from the bay.

Within the houses were wide fireplaces, where at night the logs blazed cheerily to show the Bible pictures on the tiles brought from the old country. The floors were covered with white sand marked into pretty figures with the handle of a birch broom. Everything was neat and clean; for the Dutch women were good housekeepers. They were good cooks, too, and there were great times with crullers and cakes and gingers at Easter, Christmas, and New Year. If a boy or girl in New Amsterdam had a birthday, it was sure to be celebrated with a cake set over with candles numbering the years.

The good burghers were slow, and did not make so much money as the Puritans of New England; but they did not spend so much. They built their own

Easter, Christmas,
and New Year

¹ See p. 102.

² Along what is now Wall Street, New York City.

ships to send tar, timber, and tobacco to Europe. **Many** had gardens just out of town, and after the work **was** done they sat on the stoops of the houses to smoke **and** talk till time to light pine knots for bed.

Now the United Netherlands claimed New Netherlands because of Henry Hudson's discoveries; but England claimed the region because of the discoveries of the Cabots. Charles the Second, King of England, believing the country to be his, granted the whole region to his brother, the Duke of York. The duke knew The Duke of York very well that he must reckon with Peter Stuyvesant before he could hope to call the land his. He accordingly armed four frigates and sped them away to New England to take on a land force. The United Colonies of New England promised their quota of men and the fleet sailed to New Amsterdam Bay.

The commander of the expedition sent a letter to Stuyvesant to surrender his fort.

"Surrender the majestic province of New Netherlands to four English frigates! Never!"

So said Governor Stuyvesant.

He tore up the insolent letter and stamped on it with his wooden leg. His council begged him to consider the matter. But he would listen to nothing anyone said. He set the burghers to work with spades, shovels, wheelbarrows, axes, and hammers.

The English ships drew nearer. English guns were leveled on the fort. In the end, the doughty old soldier surrendered. What else could he do with twenty guns against ninety-four? He marched out of the fort with the honors of war—drums beating, colors flying, and a

bugle playing "Wilhelmus of Nassau," which was the national air.

Netherlands
becomes New York

And so the English took possession of the Dutch colony. They changed the name of New Amsterdam to New York, and of Fort Orange to Albany. Burgomaster, schout, and schepens gave place to mayor, sheriff, and aldermen. English settlers came. But the Dutch settlers remained, and their language and customs continued in New York for many years. Even today we have the Dutch Easter and Christmas and New Year feasts. The solemn Puritans did not believe in such merriment.

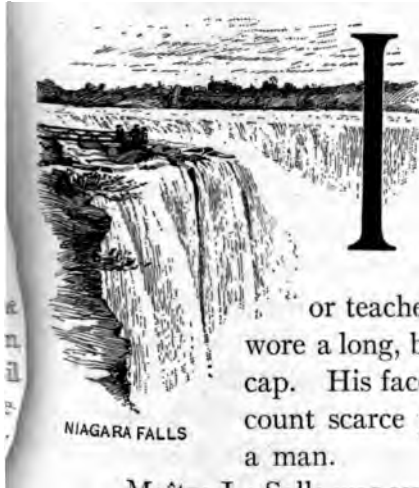
1672
Peter Stuyvesant
dies in New York

Peter Stuyvesant went back to Amsterdam; but he soon returned to New York where he lived on a farm, called the Bowery, with fifty slaves to work the soil. He occupied himself in church affairs and city improvements and never spared his advice. It was said after his death that he still lingered about—that he could be heard at midnight stumping up and down the aisles of the little church where he had been laid away to rest.

But that was said in times when some people believed in witches and ghosts!

LA SALLE, THE FATHER OF LOUISIANA TERRITORY

1643-1687



IN THE gray old town of Rouen,¹ in the ancient French province of Normandy, Robert Cavelier de la Salle went about his tasks with dreams in his head. He was maître, or teacher, in the Jesuit² school. He wore a long, black robe and a round, black cap. His face was grave, though he could count scarce years enough to be called a man.

1643
La Salle born



LA SALLE
1643 - 1687

Maître La Salle was severe, but just. Whenever the hour came, every boy hastened to his seat on the long bench in the church school. Not one of them all could see over the back of the bench; but Maître La Salle could look out over their heads through a long arcade. He could see the city sloping southward and the quaint gray houses along the Seine River and the boats passing up and down. Now and then a tall, narrow, fishing smack hove into view.

One day he said: "You may go to the door, lads. Watch that sail coming in!"

¹ See map, p. 116.

² The Jesuits are an order of priests in the Roman Catholic Church.

There was a rush to the door, with some spilling out under the open arcade—much to the scandal of a passing old monk.

"Where has this boat been, lads?" asked Maître La Salle.

"To the cod fisheries!"

"No doubt of that. But where?"

"Off Norway!" "To Greenland!" "To the English coast!" cried a chorus.

"You must guess again."

"'Tis old Michelet's boat," explained one of the oldest boys.

"Yes! 'Tis Michelet's boat. He goes to America for his fish. He has crossed the Atlantic once every year for twenty years to bring dried fish for Lent and fast days. Look well to the dingy sails."



1665
Map of the
Western Hemisphere

He summoned the boys to the bench again. He held up a map—a stretch of North and South America as the geographers understood it in the year 1665.

He put his lean white finger on the West India Islands, and on South America where the mines of Peru were, and on Mexico with its gold mines, and on California that bordered on the Pacific Ocean.

"All these countries," he said, "are claimed by the Spaniards; and Florida, northwest of the Indies, is claimed by them, too."

He pointed to the English colony of Virginia¹ and

¹ See map, p. 134.

South America

Mexico

California

Florida

Virginia

to Maryland, which had been settled by the English Maryland
Lord Calvert, a good Catholic; and to the New Nether- New York
lands, a Dutch settlement, which had been seized that
very year by the Duke of York and made an English
province.¹ Then his bony finger passed on up along
the coast of New England.

"All these are English," he said, with a frown.
"West of them stretch lands, lads. Ah, no one knows
what lands."

He pointed to Acadia,² a great French colony near Acadia
the mouth of the St. Lawrence River.

"Here we are on French soil!" he cried. "Here is
where old Michelet finds his cod. This little settlement
on the west coast of Acadia is Port Royal. Port Royal Now let
us go up this splendid St. Lawrence. All the land
along this river is New France. New France Jacques Cartier
founded Montreal far up on its right bank; and Samuel Montreal
Champlain built a fort at Quebec. Quebec Both points are
flourishing stations, where the pelts of the moose, the
bear, the beaver, the marten, the fox, the lynx, and many
other animals are purchased cheaper than anywhere
else in the world."

"Our Jesuit fathers follow the fur traders. They
are changing the heathenish red men into good Cath-
olics."

The great bell in the tower of St. Ouen's chimed the
hour. Maitre La Salle laid down the map and the boys
scattered to drone through a class with an old friar
they did not like half so well.

Perhaps it was a talk La Salle had with old Michelet
that caused him to quit the Jesuit school. At any rate

¹ See map, p. 107.

² Nova Scotia.



A JESUIT PRIEST

1666
La Salle goes to
America

he set out for America the following year. He went to Montreal, where his brother was a priest of St. Sulpice.

Montreal was then only a small village, with forests—tall, dark forests—everywhere; and there was always the roar of the rapids in the St. Lawrence River which churned and foamed with such fury that the noise was heard for miles.

The fur trader

La Salle secured a tract of land above the rapids for which he was to pay the Sulpice fathers in furs. He exchanged his long black gown for the buckskin worn by the fur traders. He built a log hut, cleared forests and planted corn. He made friends with the Indians and was presently carrying large packs of furs to Montreal and Quebec.

The Mississippi
River

The Indians told him so much about the Mississippi, a great river in the west which flowed to the salt sea, that he began dreaming again. Did this river reach the Pacific Ocean? Then it would be the great waterway to China and the Spice Islands!

Governor Frontenac

He could not rest after this idea entered his head. He tried to persuade some of the other traders to join with him in an expedition; but they only laughed at his ideas, and called his hut *La Chine*, which is the French word for China. La Salle pushed deeper and deeper into the forest, with only his faithful compass for his guide. Sometimes he was gone for weeks. Finally he paddled down the St. Lawrence to Quebec. He obtained permission from Governor Frontenac to explore French territory. Here he fitted out four canoes with supplies for fourteen men, and the priest of St. Sulpice fitted out three canoes for ten men.

With two additional canoes full of Indian guides, La Salle began his search for a waterway to China.

He reached the River Beautiful (the Ohio), and followed its westward current as far as the site of Louisville, Kentucky. He was quite persuaded that the river flowed straight west to the Pacific Ocean. Its valley was so beautiful, with its herds of deer and droves of buffalo and towns of velvet-coated beaver, that he hurried back to Quebec to tell Governor Frontenac all about it.

The Ohio River

"I have not reached the salt sea, your excellency," he said. "The Ohio flows west. Perchance it is what we seek. Yet we must secure the fur trade before the English find the way."

He showed a map he had drawn.

"See," he said. "Here is Lake Ontario. All along its south shore are the Iroquois who sell furs to the Dutch and English of New York. They go down the Mohawk to Albany.¹ They should go down the St. Lawrence to Montreal and Quebec.² Give me a fort at the mouth of Lake Ontario, and the Iroquois will favor us."

Now Governor Frontenac had spent a fortune at the gay court of Louis the Fourteenth. He had come to America to try to make money enough to live his extravagant life over again. La Salle's fur schemes promised great profit. He accordingly sent the young trader to France with letters to some of his most powerful friends.



LOUIS XIV

La Salle goes to France

La Salle's well-laid plans proved so alluring that

¹ See map, p. 170.

² See map, p. 123.

La Salle returns to
America

Father Hennepin

King Louis granted to him a vast tract of land bordering on Lake Ontario and the St. Lawrence. On the shore on which La Salle returned went Father Hennepin, monk quite as young as himself. Father Hennepin wore the gray cloak of the Franciscans,¹ with a peaked hood; a cord was around his waist, and a cross hung at his side. He told La Salle he had once been sent to Calais² at the season of the herring fisheries to beg alms for the church. He had made friends with the sailors and had become so interested in New France that he obtained leave from the fathers to go there as a missionary.

La Salle and Father Hennepin became fast friends during the voyage, and when the fur trader built Fort Frontenac³ (on the present site of Kingston) he added a little chapel where the priest might say mass.

Fort Frontenac

Fort Frontenac had ramparts of stone with palisade of logs on the water side. Cannon were mounted on the wall. There were barracks and a guard house, a lodging for officers, a smithy, a mill, and a bakery. The land around the fort was laid out in small farms, which La Salle rented to French peasants.

La Salle and Father Hennepin made peace with many of the Iroquois. The warriors came to regard La Salle as a magician. His windmill tossed its long arms around so queerly; his magnifying glass made monsters out of flies and fleas; his compass seemed trembling with life; his clock on the wall of the fort—well, his clock was surely a strange creature. The blanketed Indians squatted for hours before the clock.

¹ The Franciscans are an order of priests in the Roman Catholic Church.

² See map, p. 116.

³ See map, p. 123.

They thought it was alive, and that the "tic, tack, tic, tack" was a language quite as queer as the English.

"What does the captain say?" they would ask, meaning the clock.

La Salle or Father Hennepin would make it say whatever seemed best. But when the clock struck four it was always understood that the captain said "Get up and go." And the warriors gravely left their hosts in peace.



PERE MARQUETTE
1637 - 1675

The fur trade at Fort Frontenac flourished amazingly. Joliet, a young trader, brought word to La Salle that he and Father Marquette had reached the Mississippi River. Joliet said he had gone down the current as far as the Arkansas River and was sure the "salt sea" the Indians talked about was not the Pacific Ocean, but the Gulf of Mexico. A little later a trapper brought news that when Joliet reached Quebec to tell of this great river, the bells of the town clanged merrily all day long.

Joliet

Father Marquette



MARQUETTE GOING DOWN THE MISSISSIPPI

So the Mississippi flowed to the south? La Salle thought it all over. And then he began to dream again.

He said that the Mississippi flowing into the gulf and thence into the Atlantic Ocean would make a better highway for the fur trade than the St. Lawrence River, which was frozen so many months of the year and had the falls and the rapids to obstruct the boats.

La Salle again goes
to France



LOUIS JOLIET
1645 - 1700

Leaving Fort Frontenac in care of a lieutenant, La Salle sailed again for France. He told the king's minister he wanted to plant forts along the valleys of the Ohio and Mississippi Rivers, to keep out the English traders, whose kings had granted charters from "sea to sea."

He said the first link of a long chain of forts was Fort Frontenac, which was drawing the fur trade of the Iroquois. The second link of the chain should be at the mouth of Lake Erie. The English were watching Lake Erie because it was the key to the trade of the three lakes above it—Lake Huron, Lake Michigan, and Lake Superior.

In the end the king granted to him the right to build forts and explore such new countries as he might deem best.

Chevalier de Tonti

La Salle met in Paris, Chevalier de Tonti, a young officer in the French army, who had lost his hand in battle and supplied the loss with a hand of iron.

Tonti burned with zeal to aid in the work of planting colonies for France. He accompanied La Salle back to the St. Lawrence, and proved his lifelong friend.

Fort Conti

La Salle called the Iroquois to a grand council. He gave them scarlet cloth, hatchets, beads, and smooth words until they permitted him to erect Fort Conti at the mouth of Lake Erie¹—a second link in his long chain of forts.

The Griffin

Above Niagara Falls he built a brigantine with a griffin carved on its prow. The *Griffin* was loaded with furs to be exchanged at Fort Conti for provisions and materials for building other forts.

¹ See map, p. 123.

Meantime La Salle and Tonti explored Lake Michigan in canoes. They built Fort Miami at the mouth of the St. Joseph River—the third link in the chain of forts.

Weeks passed. They watched in vain for the *Griffin* with the supplies for their trip down the Mississippi. At last they decided to attempt the voyage in canoes. Without waiting further they paddled up the St. Joseph to a portage, and down the Kankakee and Illinois, stopping now and then to smoke the pipe of peace and to erect crosses in the open squares of the Indian towns.

They knew they must be approaching the great Father of Waters. The Indians told horrible stories of the fate of those who dared trust their canoes to its bosom. When they said demons swallowed up both men and canoes, most of the company deserted. Without men or supplies, things looked very discouraging to La Salle and Father Hennepin and to Tonti of the iron hand. Near the site of what is now the city of Peoria they built a fort, which La Salle called Crèvecœur (the broken heart)—a fourth link in his chain, and the first white settlement in the state of Illinois.

La Salle sent Father Hennepin down the Illinois to the Mississippi to explore its upper banks, and leaving Tonti at Fort Crèvecœur to finish a boat which would carry them down the great river to its mouth, he returned to Fort Frontenac for supplies.



Tonti's letter

At Fort Frontenac he learned that the *Griffin* with its rich cargo of furs was lost. Then a letter from Tonti reached him. Tonti wrote that an Indian vessel was under way near Fort Crèvecoeur. His men had deserted him, and he was alone.

Fearing for his friend's life, La Salle hurried back to the fort. He found the building in ruins. Skulls were scattered about in the long prairie grass. Was Tonti's skeleton among the rest? Skeletons bleached in the sun. La Salle said with a shudder that he would know Tonti's remains by his iron hand.

With anguish in his heart he continued his search. He paddled down the Illinois to its mouth and saw for the first time the great water highway to the gulf. But he had no wish to pursue his voyage until he could learn what had been the fate of his friend. La Salle retraced his anxious way until he learned that Tonti had escaped to Green Bay. He hastened to join Tonti, and together they proceeded to Montreal, where Governor Frontenac helped fit out four new boats to explore the Mississippi.

from the Illinois
river to the gulf

A party of fifty-four—eighteen Indian warriors, ten squaws, three papooses, and twenty-three Frenchmen—proceeded to the Illinois, and then to the Mississippi. They floated down the river between prairies and beetling crags and gloomy forests. The fresh water grew brackish. The brackish water changed to brine. Reeds as tall as the head lined the low shores. The north wind sped on the boats. Presently the gulf spread out to view. Over its placid waters skimmed birds of rare plumage. Alligators heaved heavily

like huge, black logs. Thousands of insects buzzed incessantly.

La Salle pointed to the west and to the east.

"Spain claims all this country," he said to Tonti, "but France owns it now."

"Aye," said Tonti of the iron hand, "France owns it now."

La Salle pointed north.

"The English kings give 'sea to sea' charters," he said, "but the lilies of France¹ are planted."

"Aye," said Tonti, "the lilies of France are planted."

La Salle set up a pillar carved with the arms of France. And all the vast valley of the Mississippi—from the frozen north to the reed lands of the south, from the Alleghanies to the Rocky Mountains—he called Louisiana,² after his king, Louis XIV.

1682
La Salle takes possession of the Mississippi Valley (April 9)

Louisiana

He ascended the Mississippi and the Illinois. At Starved Rock, above the ruins of Fort Crèvecoeur, and near the present city of La Salle, he built Fort St. Louis—the fifth link in his chain. Then, because of their dread that the Iroquois would again swoop down from the east, the western Indians swarmed to Fort St. Louis. Twenty thousand Indians dwelt in lodges at the fort of Starved Rock—a vast army to lead south if the Spaniards of Mexico should try to hinder a French settlement at the mouth of the Mississippi!

Fort St. Louis

By this time La Salle was dreaming again. He left Tonti at Fort St. Louis and returned to France. The fur trader dressed himself in satin and lace and a per-

La Salle's third v to France

¹ Lilies were the symbol of the French kings.

² Also called New France. See map, p. 123.

are
ily

La Salle talks with
Louis XIV

fumed wig. He went to the great palace of Versailles¹ and had audience with King Louis. It was a long audience behind closed doors. The talk was about secret affairs of state.

La Salle told the king how he had planted five forts on the highway which led from the lakes to the Gulf of Mexico; how the English were spreading toward the Alleghanies and would presently cross the mountains unless the French kept them out and how that very year a rich English Quaker



VERSAILLES

William Penn in
Pennsylvania

named Penn, had started another colony, and was making friends with the western Indians.²

He told how he had reached the mouth of the Mississippi, at the place where it divided into three great channels. He had descended one channel and Chevalier de Tonti the second, and another of his men the third. They had reached the gulf where the Spaniards claimed everything. He said he wanted to plant fort at each mouth of the great river—three forts like three pendants to his great chain of forts. Then—here old King Louis must have looked anxiously at the closed doors—then he would lead thousands of Indians from Fort St. Louis against the Spaniards of Mexico and seize their rich mines.

Now the Spaniards had been capturing French merchant vessels that tried to trade in Mexico. And

¹ See map, p. 116. ² See William Penn, p. 134.

so the king listened eagerly to a plan to punish them.

His majesty gave La Salle four ships. One of the ships, the *Joly*, carried thirty-six guns. Many colonists joined the expedition. Captain Beaujeu, who was an officer of the royal navy, was put in charge of the ships.

La Salle's colony for
Louisiana

Captain Beaujeu

Beaujeu was jealous of La Salle from the very beginning. A half dozen quarrels were patched up between the two before the voyage began. In the Gulf of Mexico the ships became separated. La Salle mistook Matagorda Bay¹ for one of the mouths of the Mississippi. He landed on the shore of the bay, and built a stockade and a fort. Presently Beaujeu came, but after unloading his passengers he sailed away in bad humor.

The colony on
Matagorda Bay

La Salle and a party of men explored the country. They were gone many days. When they returned their clothes were "so tattered there was hardly a piece left large enough to wrap a farthing's worth of salt."

Many in the fort had sickened and died, and the Indians were growing unfriendly. La Salle started to go to Montreal for aid for his colony. His companions quarreled and disputed. One morning, near a branch of Trinity River, in a region now called Texas, two of the men shot their leader from an ambush, and left him lying on the plains.

Death of La Salle

Meantime Tonti, at Fort St. Louis, heard that La Salle had entered the Gulf of Mexico with a colony. Joy! The dream was near fulfillment. Tonti paddled down the Mississippi. He reached the gulf. Day after day he searched for the colony that was starving on Matagorda Bay, four hundred miles to the west.

Tonti waits at the
gulf

¹ See map, p. 123.

He returned to Fort St. Louis; but he kept waiting for news of his friend until at last he learned of his death.

Iberville and Bienville

Years passed. Tonti heard that a French colony had been planted at the mouth of the Mississippi by two brothers, Iberville and Bienville. One day, while the two brothers were busy cutting trees to lay the foundation of their fort, a canoe swept down the swift current of the Mississippi. In the boat were six red rowers with a steersman. And in their midst sat a white man of most majestic air. Presently the canoe drew near. The man leaped to shore. It was Tonti of the iron hand.

Tonti again

1718
New Orleans
founded

The brothers welcomed the famous pioneer. For three days they talked together of La Salle and of his dreams, and of the city of New Orleans that the brothers were building on the shore of the river which the dead hero had won for France.

Tonti returned to Fort St. Louis. The links in the French chain of forts kept increasing. How those forts became at last the property of the United States is another story. But the name of La Salle will always be associated with the names of the valleys he explored.

Francis Parkman's
tribute to La Salle

"America," says Francis Parkman, "owes an enduring memory to La Salle, the pioneer who guided her to her richest heritage."

WILLIAM PENN
THE FATHER OF PENNSYLVANIA
1644-1718



THE TREATY ELM

WILLIAM PENN was born on Tower Hill, London, at a time when at least three classes of Christians in England—the Puritans, the Catholics, and the Quakers—were being persecuted because they would not conform to the rules of the Established Church.

The persecuted Puritans had ceased to go to America. They had buckled on their swords to fight, not only for religious, but for political rights. They were often called "Roundheads," because they wore cropped hair instead of long curling locks.

The persecuted Catholics were fleeing to America to a colony called Maryland, which Lord Baltimore had founded.

The persecuted Friends (called "Quakers" because George Fox, their leader, was always warning people to quake before the wrath of God) would not fight. Their religion forbade it. And they had no colony in America to which they could go where they might worship as they pleased.



WILLIAM PENN
1644-1718

1644
William Penn born
(October 14)

Religious persecutions
in England

The Puritans, or
"Roundheads"

The Friends, or
"Quakers"

The Church of
England

William Penn's father was not a Puritan, a Catholic, nor a Quaker. He belonged to the Church of England. And so it would seem that there was no reason to suppose¹ that the blue-eyed baby born that day on Tower Hill would ever be persecuted on account of his religion.

1649
Charles I beheaded

William's father was an admiral, and fought for his country on the high seas. Charles I welcomed Admiral Penn at his court. When Charles lost his head because he had tried to tax English freemen without the

1653
Cromwell becomes
Lord Protector
(December 16)



OLIVER CROMWELL
1599-1658

consent, Oliver Cromwell, the "Roundhead," became Lord Protector of England. Cromwell sent Penn to sea to fight the Spanish, and after the gallant admiral conquered Jamaica in the West Indies, he gave him vast estates. When Cromwell's son Richard had resigned the rule, and Charles

1660
Charles II ascends
the throne
(May 29)

II had become king, the admiral was again set afloat on the sea.

William Penn goes
to Oxford

And so while William Penn was growing up into a fine, sturdy lad, he had nothing to fear from either religion or politics. At fifteen he went to Oxford school, where he was treated with great respect, partly because of his father's high rank, and partly because of his scholarly mind and his skill in boating and field sports.

William Penn hears
a Quaker preach

One day he heard a Quaker preach. The Quakers wore broad-brimmed hats and long drab coats. The

¹ See p. 88.

said "thee" and "thou" instead of "you." They were unwilling to take oath in court, to go to war, or to pay taxes in support of war; and they would not bow to anyone. After William Penn heard this peculiar preaching, his habits began to change. He refused to attend religious services at Oxford, or to wear the long black gown such as other students wore. Penn leaves Oxford

The admiral was grieved when he heard of this conduct. He called William home, gave him a very full purse, and sent him to Paris with some rich noblemen who would be sure to divert his mind from serious thoughts. Penn goes to Paris

The young Englishman's figure was tall and well set. His eyes were full of light; his brow was broad, his mouth resolute; his hair, parted in the center, waved to his shoulders. All in all there was not a handsomer youth in France.

He was presented to King Louis XIV, who was not much older than himself, and he soon became a favorite at the French court. King Louis XIV

When William returned home, his father looked him over with satisfaction. He carried his sword in the French fashion; he lisped fine compliments to the ladies; he talked of his duels in the streets of Paris. The proud admiral took him to Whitehall, where Charles II held court; then he sent him to Lincoln's Inn to study law.

The Black Plague broke out in London. Sometimes ten thousand victims died in one day. Penn began again to think of religion; but the admiral did not despair. He sent his son to Ireland to manage some Penn estates. 1665
The Black Plague
Penn in Ireland

In Dublin¹ Penn joined a military expedition to put down a mutiny, and he behaved with so much valor that the Lord Lieutenant of Ireland wrote to the admiral that William should have a company of his own. The young soldier was so proud of his success that he had himself painted in his armor.

While on business in the city of Cork he heard another Quaker sermon. After that he went often to their meetings. One day the police broke into the meeting-house and arrested all who were there.

in in prison

Penn with his laces and frills and bright-hilted sword looked so different from his drab-clothed friends that the mayor of Cork offered to set him free if he would give bond not to attend the meetings. This the new convert refused to do, and remained in prison until a powerful nobleman secured his release.

It was soon noised about London that Penn had "turned Quaker or some other melancholy thing." The angry father commanded him home and implored him to abandon this ridiculous sect. Penn remained firm in his faith. He finally even gave up his beloved sword that he might better follow those who preached "peace and good will to men."

The admiral turned him out of doors and for some time he lived on the secret aid of his mother.

e Tower

Meantime Quakers were thrown into prison, set in the stocks, and whipped in the public streets. When Penn himself was imprisoned in the Tower² for preaching Quaker doctrines, his father, who had learned to admire his courage, paid his fine and received him with open arms.

¹ See map, p. 62. ² See illustration, p. 133.

Before the admiral died, he sent for Prince James, James, Duke of York the Duke of York, to beg him to protect his Quaker son from persecution, and this the duke promised to do.

Penn inherited vast estates. He traveled in Europe Penn travels in Europe to preach, and wherever he went he heard Quakers sighing for a country where they might worship as they pleased.

Now, as we have seen, King Charles II had given to the Duke of York all of New Netherlands in America.¹ That part of the Dutch province east of the Delaware became New Jersey, and was divided into East and West Jersey by Sir George Carteret and Lord Berkeley, to whom the duke had given it.



THE TOWER OF LONDON

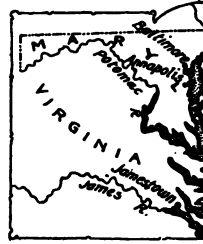
A Quaker company purchased West Jersey from Lord Berkeley and began to send settlers there. William Penn was made a trustee for West Jersey. He became so interested in the colony that he joined eleven other men of means and purchased East Jersey for another settlement of Quakers. Quakers purchase the Jerseys

Then Penn resolved to have a province all his own which should be a refuge and place of peace for himself and any other human being who was persecuted for the sake of religion.

The English crown owed his father's estate a large sum of money. Penn again went to court. This time he wore a long drab coat and a broad-brimmed hat Quaker Penn goes to court

¹ See p. 113.

which he would not remove even in the royal presence. The fun-loving king took off his own hat. "Friend Charles," asked Penn, "why dost thou remove th hat?" "Because," laughed the king, "wherever I am it is the fashion for but *one* to remain covered!" Penn, unmoved at the rebuke, asked "Friend Charles" to pay the crown debt with a grant of land west of the Delaware River, and north of Maryland where the Catholics had settled.



1681
Charles II sells
"Pennsylvania"
(February 14)



PENN IN QUAKER
GARB

The "merry monarch," thinking this a cheap way to settle the debt, made out a patent for a vast tract of land. What name should be written down in the patent? Penn liked "New Wales" because he had heard mountains were there like the mountains in Wales.¹ But the king's secretary was a Welshman. He did not want the home of the "crazy Quakers" named after his fatherland.

Penn then said the province might be called "Sylvania" because it was well wooded. And the king smilingly added that the name should be "Pennsylvania"—Penn's Woodland—in honor of the admiral, whose claim against the crown was now paid.

When it was known that Penn, the rich Quaker, was founding a colony in America which should have without laws against any religion, people from all over Europe wrote letters or sent agents to London to find out about it. But the courtiers of Charles laughed aloud about the "coward" Quakers who would not carry swords, going across the sea to live among Indians.

¹ See map, p. 62.

They said not a soul would be alive in a week's time.

A shipload of Quakers sailed to Pennsylvania in care of an agent. Others followed. Before the year was out nearly three thousand had sailed for Pennsylvania.

Immigration to
Pennsylvania

The next year Penn himself set sail, but before he went he bought some more land. Delaware,¹ between the Jerseys and Maryland, lay at the mouth of the Delaware River and was a part of the province of New York. Penn wanted to control



The purchase of
Delaware

the navigation of the river, and purchased this land from the Duke of York. When he reached Newcastle, the duke's agent, in the presence of a crowd of people—Swedes, Dutch, and English in national dress, and Indians in blankets and skins—delivered to him a handful of soil, the twig of a tree, and a flagon of water in sign that all Delaware was his.

1782
Penn arrives at
Newcastle
(October 27)

Penn proceeded up the river to a small settlement which he called Chester. Here he took possession of Pennsylvania and called the settlers together to confer.

"You shall be governed by laws of your own making," he said, "and live a free, and if you will, a sober and industrious people."

He rowed in a barge to the junction of the Delaware and Schuylkill Rivers. Here he founded his capital city, which he called Philadelphia, the City of Brotherly Love. He named its streets Cedar, Mulberry, Pine, Chestnut, and Walnut, from the trees he found growing there.

Philadelphia

¹ See map.

1682
La Salle takes
possession of the
Mississippi valley
(April 9)

Only a few months before, La Salle, the Frenchman, had taken possession of the valley¹ of the Mississippi and its tributaries, from the peaks of the Rocky Mountains to the Alleghany ridge, which included a part of the land purchased by Penn; but the great Quaker knew nothing of that. He believed the land had belonged to the English crown because of the discoveries of the Cabots.

The treaty with the
Delawares

Penn made friends with the neighboring Indians. Under a spreading elm tree he negotiated a treaty of peace, which was kept by the warriors, who remained the friends of any man who wore a broad-brimmed hat. Long after Penn's death, the Delawares would meet under the treaty elm



ONE OF PENN'S WAMPUM BELTS

to spread a blanket or clean pieces of bark, and lay down one by one their belts and wampum on which were written the pledges of Penn.

Penn visits New
York's governor

The new proprietor paid a visit to the Duke of York's province on the Hudson where that prince's governor was trying to make good Englishmen out of the Dutch. The restless French traders on the north were giving a great deal of trouble. They were trying to persuade the Iroquois to dig up the hatchet they had buried under the little Dutch church, and make war on the English "usurpers."

Penn believed in peace. He saw that in union alone there could be peace. He said if all the English colonies would join in friendly alliance, the French would not be so bold.

The governor of New York smiled at the very idea of a union between the colonies. He said he had been

¹ See p. 125.

in America long enough to know all about it. The Dutch hated the Puritans of New England; the Puritans flogged Quakers away from their towns; the Church of England men in Virginia would not harbor Catholics: and so how could the Dutch, the Puritans, the Quakers, the Catholics, and the Church of England men ever agree to a union?

Penn returned to Chester, resolved to strengthen his own colony as fast as he could. He had divided his province into counties and lots and put up the land for sale at forty shillings for a hundred acres. Before Philadelphia was two years old it numbered two thousand inhabitants and the province nearly eight thousand. The Delaware River became a busy mart of trade, where ships lay at anchor from other colonies along the coast.

Penn wrote home: "I have led the greatest colony into America that any man ever did upon a private credit."

Meantime Charles II had died, and the Duke of York came to the throne with the title of James II.

"Come and help us," wrote some persecuted Quakers from London, who had been thrown into prison. Penn, leaving his council to govern in his stead, hurried back to England. He was welcomed at court. His manners were so gentle and his wit and learning so great that he influenced the king to set more than a thousand Quakers free.

It was perhaps due to Penn more than to any other one man that Parliament a little later passed the great Toleration Act. In the Toleration Act the government

1685
Death of Charles I
(February 6)
James II

Penn returns to
England

1689
The Toleration Act

gave up all claim to the right to force subjects to belong to the Established Church.

Penn lingered in London trying to settle a boundary dispute with Lord Baltimore. In spite of all he could do, the line between Pennsylvania and Maryland remained in dispute.

1763-1767
Mason and Dixon's
line established

Many years after Penn's death the line was drawn by two surveyors named Mason and Dixon, and "Mason and Dixon's line" became known as the division of politics between the states of the South, and the Middle and New England states.

The people of England grew tired of James II, who was a tyrant over everybody except his friends. Parliament invited William of Orange and Mary, the daughter of James, to rule in his stead.

1689
William and Mary
ascend throne
(February 13)

James fled to France and Louis XIV went to war with England to restore him to his throne.

War between England
and France

Of course when the two fatherlands began fighting their children, the colonies, had a good excuse for fighting too. New York and the New England colonies rallied men and met the French in Canada.

The peace-loving Quakers did not join in the fight. Comfortable farmhouses took the place of their cabins; orchards blossomed and bore fruit; corn and wheat produced not only enough food for the settlers, but a little beside to be carried in boats to the towns on the coast.

Penn wished to again visit his colony which had become the wonder and talk of all Europe; but trouble of his own kept him long in England.

Penn again in prison

He was accused of receiving a letter from the exiled

James, and was in prison for several months. King William claimed that on account of Governor Penn's absence his province was in disorder. France was threatening all the American colonies. His majesty said Pennsylvania should have a military defense even if the Quakers did not believe in fighting. He accordingly appointed a governor who tried to muster all the able-bodied men in the province. But the good Quakers refused to shoulder muskets and there was the worst sort of confusion throughout Pennsylvania.



PENN'S HOUSE IN PHILADELPHIA

Two years later, when Penn sailed back to his colony with his wife and one of his daughters, he was surprised at the beauty and size of Philadelphia, which was now a rival of Boston.

1699
Penn returns to his province

Penn had two homes, one in the city and the other in the country. His country home, Pennsburg Manor, cost him thirty-five thousand dollars. It was surrounded by a great park and was very elegantly furnished. He entertained freely whoever came—white men, Indians, or negroes. It is said that at one of the feasts in the vast dining room his visitors ate a hundred roasted turkeys.

Pennsburg Manor

Penn did not remain long in America. Word came from England that on account of an approaching war with France all the colonies in America were to be put under governors appointed by the king, and the Penn-

1701
Penn returns to England

sylvania assembly urged him to return to court to plead for his rights.

1702
Death of William III
(March 8)
Queen Anne

King William died soon after Penn's arrival in England, and Queen Anne came to the throne. Anne had known the great Quaker all her life. She said he should remain governor of Pennsylvania as long as he lived, and that his heirs should succeed him. When Anne died, George I became king. So that eight monarchs sat on the English throne during the life of William Penn. Each of these rulers had something to do with colonial affairs in America. Do you remember who they were?

Charles I
Oliver Cromwell
Richard Cromwell
Charles II
James II
William and Mary
Anne I
George I

1718
Death of Penn
(July 30)

When Penn died in England he was still the honored governor of Pennsylvania. Today his name ranks with the greatest names in our history. His descendants held office until the American colonies formed a united government. And then the new state of Pennsylvania purchased the claims of the Penns who had ruled for nearly a hundred years.

1779
The state of
Pennsylvania
purchases the claims
of the Penns

WILLIAM PITT
THE GREAT COMMONER
 1708-1778



WESTMINSTER ABBEY

WILLIAM PITT was born in Westminster, which is now a part of London but at that time was a city in itself. The Pitt house stood hardly a stone's throw from Westminster Abbey, where Henry VII, who had sent out the Cabots to find America, lies buried. Here also, lie Elizabeth, who knighted Raleigh and Drake for services in

1708
 William Pitt born
 (November 15)

Westminster Abbey



WILLIAM PITT
 LORD CHATHAM
 1708-1778

America, and James I, who persecuted the Puritans, and Charles I, who lost his head because he had tried to deprive Englishmen of their political rights.

Many commoners without any title at all—warriors, discoverers, statesmen, and poets—have been honored with tombs in Westminster Abbey. Sometimes William was allowed by the good beadle to wander in and out among the tall monuments, and he had to tilt high his face—a keen little face with piercing eyes and a nose like an eagle's beak—to read the names of the dead who had helped to make England great.

England then ranked among the greatest nations of Europe. Since the Toleration Act¹ thousands of Persecuted Christians from France, Spain, Holland,

1689
 The Toleration Act

¹ See p. 137.

and Germany—weavers, artists, printers, ironmasters—
had migrated to England to ply their trades.

The colonies in America furnished a fine market
for wares manufactured in England or carried in
English ships from the Indies.

of the

William Pitt's grandfather had once been governor
of Madras in the East Indies. The lad often sat on
his grandfather's knee to hear about the dazzling East
Indies, with its camels and elephants, its ivories, silks,
and spices. He heard a deal about the West Indies,
too; for his grandfather had also been governor of
Jamaica, and knew all about the neighboring islands
owned by the Spaniards.

Inn

When the boy was old enough he went to Eton to
school and then to Oxford and to Lincoln's Inn, just
as William Penn, the Quaker, had done. But the life
of Penn was spent in bringing peace to men, while it
seems to have been the mission of Pitt to send war
toward all the four points of the compass.

s
it

While still in his twenties Pitt entered Parliament.
The English Houses of Parliament, you know, are the
House of Lords and the House of Commons. The
lords, in most cases, inherit their seats. The com-
moners are elected by the people. The members of
Parliament are supposed to enact new laws and guard
old laws from abuse.

speech in
of

Pitt was elected to the House of Commons. His
first speech made him famous. Some said it was his
handsome face with its piercing eyes and its nose like
the beak of an eagle that attracted so much attention;
others said it was his voice, so ringing and clear that

st

even his whisper reached the farthest corner of the hall; others said it was his display of words and the gestures he made with his long arms.

"War" was almost the first thing Pitt talked about in the House of Commons.

English ships had shaken their mastheads at Spain's orders to keep away from West Indian ports, and Spaniards were capturing English seamen and throwing them into prison.

"When trade is at stake," cried Pitt, "you must defend it or perish!"

England declared war against Spain. When King George called upon the American colonies for help, troops from New England and from Virginia, and even from Pennsylvania, sailed to Jamaica to join Admiral Vernon's fleet.

1739
England declares
war against Spain
The colonies aid in
the Spanish war

When France joined Spain in the war the American colonies sent men north with Commodore Warren's fleet, and conquered Louisburg, a stout fort on Cape Breton Island,¹ which the French had been building for years.

France joins Spain

1745
Louisburg captured

Pitt was delighted when he heard of the brave Americans.

"Much of England's glory or ruin depends on our colonies," he said.

He was almost as angry as the Americans themselves, when the king's ministers gave Louisburg back to France in exchange for Madras, in India, which the French had captured. He knew very well that Louisburg must be taken over again. But the King's ministers did not understand that. One of them really

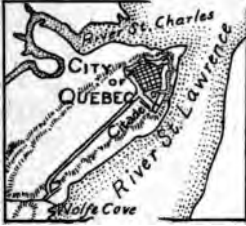
Louisburg exchanged
for Madras

¹See map, p. 147.

understood so little about the geography of America that he was quite surprised when he heard that Cape Breton was an island.

"Well, well," said this ignorant minister, "I must go tell the king Cape Breton's an island!"

French colonies



Spanish colonies

English colonies

Pitt very often studied the map of America. He would begin at Cape Breton, near the mouth of the St. Lawrence River, and move his finger up the river to Quebec, the capital of New France, and to Montreal, and to scores of Jesuit missions along its banks. He followed the line of French forts¹ to the Mississippi and on down the "Great Father of Waters" to New Orleans, the French trading post on the gulf; then out into the gulf and along the coast of Spanish Florida to Georgia, the youngest colony planted by the English, and to South Carolina, North Carolina, Virginia, Maryland, Delaware, Pennsylvania, New Jersey, New York, Connecticut, Rhode Island, Massachusetts, New Hampshire, and to Maine—a wilderness of many bays which belonged to Massachusetts. Thirteen colonies lay along the sea-coast, all loyal to the English crown.

The English colonies abounded in corn, cattle, flax, iron, and trees fit for ship-building. The inhabitants were doubling in number every twenty years. In the southern colonies tobacco and rice were cultivated on vast plantations; in the northern colonies the people farmed the lands, engaged in fisheries, and built every year a hundred and fifty vessels to sell in Europe and the West Indies. New York City, Boston, and Philadelphia were thrifty, busy cities, and all along the sea lay towns

¹ See map, p. 123.

whose harbors were filled with trade ships from England. Truly, as Pitt said, much of England's glory depended on her colonies.

But there on the map, to the north, were the French ready to seize these profitable colonies; to the south were the Spanish allies of the French; and to the west the mountains hemmed them in and to the east the sea. Pitt knew very well that the French claimed the wilderness beyond the mountains—so rich in furs and plow-land. But the English claimed it, too. Some English trappers had crossed the ridges and built their huts as though they intended to stay.

Presently it was noised about London that King George had granted a patent to the "Ohio Company" for a large tract of land. The land lay in a valley where two rivers formed a fork and plunged into one great stream, called by the Indians the "Ohio."

1749
The royal charter to
the Ohio Company

"If a fort were built at the head of the Ohio," said Pitt, "the trade route of the whole valley would be easy to guard from the French."

Word came to the House of Commons that while the Ohio Company was building a fort at the head of the Ohio, some French and Indians had attacked the workmen, driven them off, and built a fort for themselves, which they called "Fort Duquesne."¹ Almost the next ship into port carried news that a small company of Virginia troops had been defeated near Fort Duquesne.

Fort Duquesne
built by the French

"English blood shed by Frenchmen must be avenged," cried the excited members of the House of Commons.

¹ See map, p. 147.

1755
Defeat of General
Braddock

General Edward Braddock was sent across the sea with two regiments of redcoats. The lawmakers of England waited to hear from the wilderness west of the mountains. Presently word came that General Braddock had been killed in an engagement with the French near Fort Duquesne; more than half of his army had fallen, and the whole army of regulars and colonists would have been destroyed but for the skill of a young American, George Washington, who had rallied the flying remnant into an orderly retreat. Then word came that the French from Canada had sailed down Lake Champlain and built Fort Ticonderoga¹ at the foot of Lake George, and meant to get possession of the Hudson River. That would split the colonies in two, and make it easy enough for the French to conquer them all.

1756
The French build
Fort Ticonderoga



MARQUIS DE MONTCALM
1712-1759

More English regulars were hurried to America. But more French troops were hurried too, and their leader was Marquis de Montcalm, one of the greatest generals of Europe.

"I dread to hear from America," said Pitt, when he learned that Montcalm had sailed up the St. Lawrence.

1757
Fort William Henry
captured (August 9)

Montcalm soon made war-news for the English House of Commons. He captured Fort William Henry, which New Yorkers had built at the head of Lake George.

Shame and grief and rage filled the hearts of the people of England. "One man alone," they said, "can save our colonies and redeem the national honor." "Pitt! Pitt!" they called, at the very door of the royal palace.

¹ See map, p. 147.

King George II was forced to dismiss his favorites from office, and William Pitt became prime minister.

This time Pitt spread out the map of the whole world; for England was also at war with the French in the East Indies and the West Indies and in Africa and on the high seas.

He saw clearly enough that his armies in America could reach Canada by only three routes: up the St. Lawrence from the ocean, down the St. Lawrence from the west, and down Lake Champlain from the south. He

knew that the Indians would choose sides—the Hurons and other lake Indians with the French, and the Iroquois with the English—and so he learned all he could about Indian warfare.

He realized that the colonists had not been treated fairly by the English generals in command, and he ordered that they should be promoted in the ranks, should act as scouts and fight Indian fashion whenever it seemed necessary.

He despatched twenty-five thousand more Englishmen to America. He removed one officer after another until the right man for the place was found. Swift sailboats and sweating postboys carried his orders to different camps. Soon twenty-five thousand colonials in buckskin and an equal number of redcoats were changing the map of America.

1757
King George II
Pitt becomes Prime
Minister of England
(December 4)

Pitt plans a campaign



1758
Fort Louisburg
recaptured (July 26)

Fort Duquesne
becomes Fort Pitt
(November 25)

An army under General Amherst and Admiral Boscawen captured Fort Louisburg; General Forbes and Colonel George Washington took Fort Duquesne, and changed its name to Fort Pitt.

All England saw that the master hand of Pitt would win victory from the French. Parliament voted large sums of money to carry on the war. More soldiers from Scotland,¹ Ireland,¹ and England¹ hurried to America, and colonial farmers in homespun left their plows to join them.

1759
Fort Niagara
captured (July 25)

Ticonderoga and
Crown Point

Fort Niagara, the key to the Great Lakes, the Illinois River, and the Mississippi, was taken. Ticonderoga and Crown Point, which protected Canada from the south, were seized.

General Wolfe

The gallant young General Wolfe with an army of nine thousand men sailed up the St. Lawrence.



JAMES WOLFE
1727-1759

1759
Surrender of Quebec
(September 18)

Wolfe watched Quebec, situated on a high cliff and guarded for miles with guns. Montcalm and his army were there. Weeks passed in an effort to gain the city from below. Then Wolfe sailed farther up the river. He landed his men above Quebec,² and they scaled the rugged cliffs by night. Daybreak revealed them drawn up in line on the Field of Abraham, facing Quebec.

Montcalm, amazed at the sight, quickly rallied his troops. The French and Canadians poured out of the great west gate of the city and formed in battle line.

The struggle was fierce, but soon over; and Quebec, too, came under the British flag.

¹ See map, p. 62.

² See map, p. 144.

Pitt, the terror of France, became the military wonder of the civilized world. He was called the "Great Commoner" by the people, who openly boasted on the streets of London that he might add France itself to the British crown. The Great Commoner

Pitt had secret information that Spain would join France in the war when some treasure-ships from South America came safely into port. He urged the king to declare war on Spain and seize the treasure on the high seas, as Elizabeth had seized King Philip's.

The king by this time was young George III, George II having died soon after the fall of Quebec. As the dead king's grandson was hurrying to London, Pitt, very splendid in a coach and six, had met the young prince and welcomed him as his king. As they entered the city, Pitt, riding behind, was cheered even more than the king.

It was soon whispered about that his majesty, George III, was jealous of his prime minister's fame and wished to dismiss him from office.

Pitt boldly sent ships to the far-away Philippine Islands¹ and to the West Indies to strike quickly when Spain should make her first move. Philippine Islands

When the king and his favorite, Lord Bute, refused to believe that Spain would join France in the war, Pitt resigned his office, and Lord Bute became secretary of state. Lord Bute

The Spanish treasure reached port, and Spain *did* join France in the war; but the fleets Pitt had sent to 1761
Pitt resigns his office



GEORGE III
1738 - 1820

1762
The English capture
Havana (August 14)
Manila (October 6)

¹ See map, between pp. 248-249.

1763
Final treaty of peace
at Paris
(February 10)

Spanish waters captured Havana, the capital of Cuba and Manila in the Philippines.

It was Lord Bute who arranged the treaty of peace but everybody knew that Pitt had made the wonderful treaty possible.

France lost her possessions in North America except some islands in the Gulf of St. Lawrence. England gained Canada and all French and Spanish lands east of the Mississippi except New Orleans. Then, to repay Spain for the loss of Florida, France gave to Spain New Orleans and the territory between the Mississippi River and the Rocky Mountains. Lord Bute gave Havana and Manila back to Spain. Both Englishmen and Americans grumbled at that. They said if Pitt had made the treaty the cities would have been kept and would have brought a vast trade.



A tax on American
colonies proposed

The colonists felt that Pitt was the best friend they had in England. When the House of Commons discussed taxing the Americans to help pay for the long war, Pitt said they had already done their share. They had lost thousands of men and paid large sum of money for a war brought on by a quarrel between England and France.

"Parliament must put a tax on the Americans, persisted the king's ministers.

"They have their own parliaments, called Assemblies," said Pitt. "Our Parliament has no right under heaven to lay a tax without their consent."

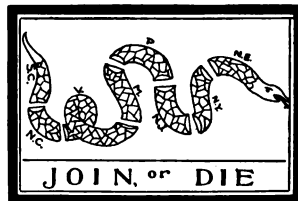
1765
Passage of the
Stamp Act
(March 22)

One day while Pitt was absent, the House of Commons passed an act to impose a tax on Americans by requiring stamps to be placed on legal and commercial papers. All written documents must be executed on the stamped paper—marriage certificates, burial certificates, deeds, wills, transfers—everything, to be legal, must have the stamp.

Alarming news reached England even before the stamps were delivered. Pitt heard it all.

"Our fatherland should remember we are children and not slaves," wrote someone from Penn's land.

"We will none of us import British goods until the act is repealed," wrote the merchants of Boston, New York, and Philadelphia.



FRANKLIN'S "JOIN OR DIE."

It was said that some colonies had set up looms to weave their own cloth, and that farmers were eating no mutton that they might have wool.

"All the colonies will go into manufacturing," warned the governor of Maryland.

A newspaper from America was handed from bench to bench in Parliament. At the head of the newspaper was the picture of a snake divided into parts, bearing the names of the colonies and the motto: "Join or Die!"

It was even said that a congress of the colonies had met in New York City.

Presently a "Declaration of Rights and Grievances" came to be read in Parliament. The declaration

Colonial convention
in New York meets
(October 7)

A Declaration of
Rights

maintained that Americans were subjects of the king like other Englishmen, but it was the natural right of a British subject to vote his own tax.

John Adams

John Adams of Massachusetts wrote: "If the great men are determined to enforce the acts, they will find a more obstinate war than the conquest of Canada."

"Great Sir," said an American newspaper sent to King George, "retreat or you are ruined."

The king intended to have his own way. "Enforce the Stamp Act with the sword!" he cried.

"France and Spain stand ready to help the colonies," warned Pitt. "Even now France is increasing her navy."

1766
The House of
Commons summons
Benjamin Franklin
(February 13)

Benjamin Franklin, an editor of Philadelphia, who had given prominence to the motto "Join or Die", was called before the House of Commons. Franklin was so fearless in his defense of colonial rights that he made a great impression on the lawmakers of England.

Pitt worked day and night to undo the harm that had been done. "Repeal the Stamp Act," he said to the stubborn king's ministers. "I repeat, my lords, it is not in accord with the English constitution."

When at last the final vote on the repeal came, the galleries and halls of Westminster were crowded with trembling and anxious merchants who said their trade with America was ruined.

"Only Pitt can put an end to this anarchy," whispered a member of Parliament, as he hurried into his seat.

Pitt speaks against
the Stamp Act

Presently Pitt hobbled in, swathed in flannel. His eagle face was alive with emotion. Some Americans¹

¹ Benjamin West, the painter, was one of these Americans. See p. 227.

up in the gallery could hardly keep from cheering aloud.

The debate lasted till after midnight. Pitt made one great speech. Others replied. Pitt spoke again. The Stamp Act was repealed.

1766
Repeal of the
Stamp Act
(March 18)

When the doors were opened and Pitt appeared, caps were thrown into the early morning air and huzzas resounded from the tradesmen, who crowded about the great man's chair and escorted him to his door.

King George, in spite of his jealousy, called Pitt to court and gave him the title of the Earl of Chatham. This title gave the "Great Commoner" a seat in the House of Lords.

The Earl of
Chatham

Some of his old friends feared he might become a tool for the king and his favorites. But no! Lord Chatham continued to lash corruption on every side. To the end of his life he felt that the cause of the colonists was his own.

When the colonial oppressions increased and America rose in arms,¹ he plead always for liberty and justice.

1775
War breaks out
between England
and the colonies
(April 19)

The stubborn king would have his own way in American affairs. Because Englishmen were too slow in taking up arms against their kinsmen, his majesty hired some Hessian troops to help the English regulars.

King George hires
the Hessians

Chatham again spoke out in the House of Lords. "You cannot conquer America!" he said. "If I were an American, as I am an Englishman, while a foreign troop was landed in my country, I would never lay down my arms. Never, *never*, NEVER!"

News reached England that the Americans had met in convention and had signed a Declaration of Independence. Benjamin Franklin, who was still

¹ See p. 166.

working in London for the cause of the colonies, openly rejoiced at the courage of his countrymen.

1777
Burgoyne's surrender
(October 17)

King George and his ministers sent army after army across the sea to conquer the colonies. Report came at last that General Burgoyne had surrendered to the Americans at Saratoga, with his whole force of six thousand men, among them six members of Parliament.

Lord North

Lord North, the prime minister, wept at the news, it is said; and his majesty "fell into agonies." But still King George would not make terms.

"Do justice to America," cried Chatham, in the House of Lords. "Do justice tonight. Do it ere you sleep!"

France recognizes
the independence
of the American
colonies

Then news came that France, encouraged by the surrender of Saratoga, had acknowledged the independence of the colonies and would furnish ships and men to aid them.

The blow had fallen at last.

Lord Chatham's last
speech in Parliament

Chatham, with the pallor of death upon his brow, appeared in Parliament for the last time.

He was enraged that France, his old enemy, should humble the proud name of the England he had done so much to exalt.

He urged defiance to France on the one hand and firm hold on the colonies on the other. Later he rose again as if to speak. He pressed his hand to his breast, and fell.

1778
Death of Chatham
(May 11)

When the great man died, the House of Commons asked for a public funeral, and voted a large sum of money for his monument in Westminster Abbey, where kings and the other makers of England lay.

GEORGE WASHINGTON THE FATHER OF HIS COUNTRY

1732-1799



GEORGE WASHINGTON was born on February 22, 1732, in Westmoreland County, Virginia. His father was a rich planter who died when the boy was eleven years old. Lawrence Washington, George's elder

1732
Birth of George
Washington
(February 22)

brother, inherited the plantation on the Potomac River, which he called "Mount Vernon"

Mount Vernon

in honor of Admiral Vernon, under whom he had once fought the Spaniards.¹

Lord Fairfax lived near Mount Vernon. He was a courtly old gentleman who had left England a few years before to cultivate his vast estate in Virginia. Before George had entered his teens, his lordship became his very firm friend. The two tramped together for days to visit plantations, or survey thick-set forests, or deer-stalk along the river.



Lord Fairfax

When his lordship found George was accurate in his measurement of land, he sent him to the Shenandoah Valley, beyond the Blue Ridge Mountains, to survey an immense tract he owned. The lad was barely sixteen years old, but he boldly followed the Indian trails, crossed unknown streams, climbed unknown mountains, and passed through forests filled with wild beasts.

YOUNG GEORGE WASHINGTON

1748
Washington surveying
in the Shenandoah
Valley

¹ See p. 143.

The adventure taught him the habits of the Indians and the craft of the woods which served him so well in later years.

Public surveyor

Lord Fairfax was pleased with George's report. He secured him the positions of public surveyor, and major in the Virginia militia.



1749
Grant of land
to the Ohio
Company

MOUNT VERNON

When Lawrence Washington died, George became the owner of Mount Vernon and one of the richest young men in the South.

There was much talk in Virginia about the Ohio Company, which had a charter from George II for lands along the Ohio River. The company agreed to settle a hundred families on this land within seven years.

Trappers from the Ohio reported that the French were building forts south of Lake Erie, and would soon hold the whole valley.

1753
Washington visits
French forts
(November)

Governor Dinwiddie straightway sent George Washington, then only twenty-one, to find out what the French plans were. Washington made a journey of a thousand miles through pathless forests, in winter time. He had narrow escapes, but after an absence of nearly three months, he returned to Williamsburg, where the governor lived.

1754
Return to
Williamsburg
(January 16)

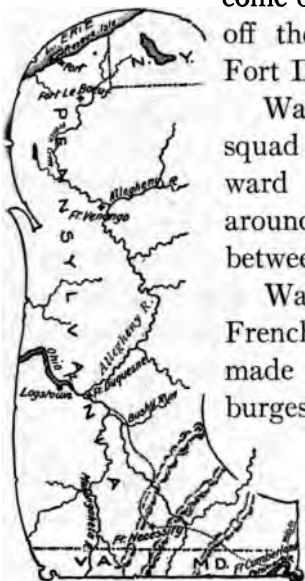
"The only way to keep the French out," he said, "is to build forts and fill them with soldiers." Some

men were accordingly sent to build a fort at the junction of the Allegheny and Monongahela Rivers—the key to the Ohio valley.

Washington, with the rank of lieutenant-colonel, soon followed the workmen with two companies of the militia. He learned on the way that the French had come down the Allegheny River, driven off the Virginians and were building Fort Duquesne.

Washington fired the first shot at a squad of French soldiers. It was afterward said that his shot was heard around the world; for it began the war between England and France.

Washington was defeated by the French near Fort Duquesne; but he made such a gallant stand that the burgesses of Virginia gave him a vote of thanks.



1754
Defeat of Washington
near Fort Duquesne
(July 4)

Edward Braddock came from England with his regulars to take a hand in the fight for the Ohio valley. The British general appointed Washington on his staff, because he knew the road to the western fort; but he was too proud to listen to any American's advice.

On General
Braddock's staff

Washington, quite fine in his uniform, rode at his general's side. He tried to explain the Indian way of fighting. He said the French had red allies and would probably strike from ambush.

General Braddock did not heed a word that Wash-

ington said. His men must march to music, which rang out for miles, and his flags must fly open if the thickets *did* tear them to shreds.

The regulars in red coats, and the Virginians in homespun, marched together through forests and swift mountain streams. But they eyed each other with distrust.

1755
Braddock's defeat
(July 9)

About seven miles from Fort Duquesne, the French and some Indian allies fired from an ambush. The English, in solid files, were shot down by hundreds. Braddock was killed with three-fourths of his officers, and only the courage of Washington saved the fleeing remnants of the army from destruction.

1758
Fort Duquesne
becomes Fort Pitt
(November 25)

Later, in the French war, which raged for seven years, Washington led a Virginia regiment against Fort Duquesne. With him went General Forbes and his regulars. The French were driven away and the name of the fort was changed to Fort Pitt.

1759
Washington marries
Martha Custis
(January 6)

The hero of Fort Pitt resigned his commission in the Virginia regiment. He married Martha Custis, a young widow of wealth, and became a member of the House of Burgesses.

The House of
Burgesses

At the very time that William Pitt¹ was pleading in the House of Commons for the repeal of the Stamp Act, George Washington was a member of the House of Burgesses in Virginia.

The people of Virginia elected the burgesses, who met every year at Williamsburg to help the governor and his council make laws. Sometimes the king of England made laws for his colonies without asking their consent, and that did not please the Americans.

¹ See p. 153.

It was said that Virginia was the most loyal province in all the colonies. But when young George III came to the throne, the Virginians had scarce stopped tossing their three-cornered hats before they saw he was determined to rule them as no king had ever yet tried to do.

1760
George III ascends
the throne of
England
(October 25)

The French war was over,¹ but it had cost the people of England a great deal of money. The king saw the colonies growing richer and richer. Ships came into port laden with furs, rice, tobacco, lumber, tar, and wheat. Even cotton, which it cost so much to bring from India, was beginning to be profitable in some of the colonies.

"The Americans shall be taxed to help pay for the conquest of Canada," said King George. So Parliament discussed the Stamp Act.²

The Stamp Act
proposed

Now the Americans were willing to help bear England's burdens, though they thought they had done their share in both money and men. They said they were willing to pay taxes if they might vote, like the freemen of England; but if this tax were levied many others might be, and the people would soon become slaves.

Almost all the colonies sent petitions to England against the Stamp Act. Virginia, too, sent a petition. But King George paid no heed to any. The Stamp Act was passed. Some of the paper came up the Potomac. What would the burgesses of Virginia do now?



A TAX STAMP

1765
Stamp Act passed
(March 22)

On a fine day in May the people of Williamsburg assembled in front of the capitol where the burgesses met once a year. They watched their lawmakers go

¹ See pp. 145-150. ² See pp. 150-151.

Peyton Randolph
Richard Henry Lee
Edmund Pendleton

up the broad portico—the dignified Peyton Randolph, the eloquent Richard Henry Lee, the astute lawyer Edmund Pendleton, the popular planter Benjamin Harrison—one after the other, alone or in groups, the “Honorables” ascended the steps.

Some wore powdered wigs, and some their own hair tied in a queue, from which they kept doffing their hats.

No one of them all brought forth such nudgings and nods as a tall young man who walked by the side of Lord Fairfax.

“That’s the colonel!” whispered the loiterers. “That’s Washington of Mount Vernon who saved Braddock’s men!”

Fairfax did not enter the House of Burgesses. He stood at the door in earnest speech, and then slowly and with a troubled look set off down the street.

Washington in the
House of Burgesses

Washington entered Assembly Hall. He took his seat before the speaker’s desk. About him sat rich planters like himself, and lawyers, and some of the clergy. All were old friends, except a lank young member in homespun, newly come from a distant borough.

The session began in the midst of a buzz of excitement. What should be done about the stamps? Some said wait and see what the other colonies would do. Others said, that since the act was now a law, it would have to be obeyed.

1765
Patrick Henry
introduces resolutions
against the Stamp Act
(May 30)

The stranger in homespun arose. “Mr. Patrick Henry of Hanover,” called out the speaker.

The young man held a paper in his hand. He read off some resolutions in a thrilling voice.

These resolutions declared that an unjust law should be opposed; that the Virginians had a charter from the king granting to them the rights of English subjects; that English subjects had the right to tax themselves, and that whoever claimed that Parliament could tax the Virginians without their consent was an enemy to the colony.

Some of the burgesses grew pale and fairly trembled as they listened; but George Washington nodded his head.

In the fierce debate that followed, the new member arose again, ablaze with wrath. He closed his speech: "Caesar had his Brutus, Charles the First his Cromwell, and George the Third—" "Treason! Treason!" shouted many; but Washington was not among them.

The orator waited. He looked about at the pallid faces. "George the Third," he repeated, "may profit by their example. *If this be treason, make the most of it.*"

Most of Patrick Henry's resolutions were passed in spite of the uproar. Among those who voted in favor was Colonel Washington. But he said not a word during all the debate. He was a man of deeds, not words.

The Virginia resolutions were published in New England and scattered through all the colonies.

The Virginia
resolutions

Benjamin Franklin of Pennsylvania, and other agents from America, labored in England for the repeal of the Stamp Act; William Pitt used all his eloquence against the odious measure.

The act was repealed.

1766
Repeal of the Stamp
Act (March 18)

Lord Fairfax said he had known all along that the king would be just to his colonies.

For a time there was peace in Virginia, as well as in all America.

Washington the
planter



WASHINGTON'S COACH AND FOUR

Washington lived in quiet ease at Mount Vernon. He kept open house, with a brave show of plate and china and modish silks and brocades. Slaves worked in his fields. Vessels lay at his wharves, loading up with tobacco and cotton for export, or unloading all sorts of merchandise shipped straight from England.

The broad veranda overlooking the river was a favorite resort of the rich planters. They came to talk about the tobacco crop, and the cotton experiments, and fox hunting, deer stalking, and cock fighting. "Yankee" peddlers from New York, Boston, and Philadelphia brought the latest gossip from along the coast; and once in two weeks the mail from the North came lazily up the Potomac.

King George was not satisfied to allow the colonies to have their own way.

1773
A duty on tea is laid
by Parliament
(May 10)

Parliament levied a port duty on tea.

Now taxed tea seemed as bad as taxed paper. And the money to be collected from the taxes was largely to pay the expense of keeping a small English army in America.

"Why," asked the colonies, "do we now need an English army? The French have gone, the Spaniards are farther away, and besides, we can muster brave men of our own."

They were convinced that the redcoats were coming to compel them to do as the king and his Parliament willed.

The tea was brought to the ports in the ships of the East India Company, and everybody remembered how blood and money had once been spent on Louisburg only to have the fortress exchanged for Madras just to please this East India Company.¹

The East India
Company

Tea was denounced by many as a "pernicious weed," and dried leaves from the forest were brewed in its stead.

But some of the colonists said that since the tea tax was a law, it was best to obey it.

And so the people were divided into two parties. Those who were willing to obey the unjust law were called Tories, and those who refused to obey it were called Whigs.

Tories and Whigs

One of the fiercest of Tories was old Lord Fairfax. George Washington, whom he loved like his own son, caused his lordship many a sleepless night.

When Governor Dunmore dissolved the assembly for its boldness of speech, and the burgesses met immediately after in another hall, it was George Washington who presented a resolution to import no more merchandise that was taxed by the English Parliament.

1774
Governor Dunmore
dissolves the
Assembly (May 25)

Presently news came up the Potomac that the tea ships had arrived in port. They lay at anchor in the harbors of Boston, New York, Philadelphia, and Charleston; but the people would not allow the tea to be landed in spite of all that the royal governors could do.

¹ See p. 143.

1773
The Boston Tea
Party (December 16)

Then a swift-sailing packet brought news of a "Tea Party" in Boston. The people of Boston had emptied three hundred and forty-two great chests of tea into the bay.

What would King George and his Parliament do now?

Washington thought that the people of Boston had been hasty in destroying the property of the East India Company; yet he knew the fierce hate of oppression that prompted the deed.

But what would the king and his Parliament do? No sound from the mother country escaped his quick ear.

1774
Parliament orders
Port of Boston closed
(March 7)
Port closed (June 1)

Word about the punishment for the Tea Party came very soon. Parliament had closed the port of Boston and passed the Quartering Bill, which made legal the quartering of troops at private houses. Virginia then, as well as the rest, might expect to have her plantations invaded by haughty British grenadiers.

The Quebec Bill

Parliament had also passed the Quebec Bill, which annexed the land north of the Ohio to Quebec. Virginia, Massachusetts, and Connecticut claimed this land under their charters. Most of the colonies had shared the expense of winning it from the French.

1774
The First Continental
Congress assembles
in Philadelphia
(September 5)

The hero of Fort Pitt could not restrain his rage when he heard of the new regulations. "'Join or die' is a good motto," he said. "'Join or die'" had by this time become the watchword of all the colonies. Letters were exchanged between them, and a congress was called to meet in Philadelphia.

George Washington, whom people remembered now

as the hero of the French war, Patrick Henry the orator, Richard Henry Lee, who had made a bonfire of stamps, Edmund Pendleton the lawyer, and other prominent Whigs were elected delegates from Virginia.

Washington, Pendleton, and Henry rode together through dense forests and sparse settlements to the City of Brotherly Love. They reached Carpenters' Hall just in time for the meeting.

Washington looked with interest upon men about whom he had heard. There was Samuel Adams of Massachusetts, the leader of the Boston Tea Party, and the Rutledges from South Carolina—John, and Edward his brother, who had just returned from London with fine manners learned at court. But Edward Rutledge was a patriot. He said Benjamin Franklin was still working in London for the repeal of the tea tax. William Livingston from New Jersey was in the congress, and John Jay from New York, and many other men whose names were known throughout the colonies.

We may be sure that the members of the first Continental Congress looked with interest at the hero of Braddock's campaign.

Not a few who noted his quiet, soldierly bearing must have thought that in case of war the Virginian would be the foremost man of them all.

But the first Continental Congress did not talk about war above whisperm. Many thought that Massachusetts had been too bold in resisting the king. At the beginning of the meeting there were such different views about everything that a union seemed almost impossible.

John Jay

John Jay opposed the motion to open the session with prayer. He said no one could expect Baptists, Presbyterians, Congregationalists, Episcopalians, Quakers, and Catholics to unite in worship.

But Samuel Adams, from "stiff-necked" Massachusetts, arose and said he was "no bigot, and could hear a prayer from any patriot." If a rigid Puritan could yield his creed, all were willing to do so.



SAMUEL ADAMS
1722-1803

Declaration of
Rights

Patrick Henry, in the first great speech of the congress, exclaimed: "British oppression has effaced the boundaries of the several colonies; the distinctions between Virginians, Pennsylvanians, New Yorkers, and New Englanders are no more . . . I am not a Virginian, but an American!"

Thus joined together in good feeling, the delegates drew up a Declaration of Rights, in which they demanded to be treated as English subjects, and not as slaves.

Parliament paid no heed to the "Declaration of Rights." King George sent word to all the colonial governors to prepare for war.



PATRICK HENRY

1774
General Gage
fortifies Boston Neck
(September 5)

1775
Second Continental
Congress

1775
Concord and
Lexington (April 19)

General Gage fortified Boston Neck, and when the second Continental Congress assembled at Philadelphia, a battle had taken place at Concord and Lexington.

One of the delegates, fresh from the field, was John Hancock of Boston, who said three hundred redcoats had been killed in the fight.

Another of the delegates was Benjamin Franklin of Pennsylvania, who had just come from London and

knew all about the king and his Parliament. Franklin said Englishmen were unwilling to enlist against their kinsmen. It was rumored that the king would hire some troops of the Duke of Hesse.

The Hessians

“Lord Chatham keeps warning the king against France,” said Franklin.

“And the Frenchmen might prove as good help for us as the Hessians for George and his Parliament,” called out someone, quite loudly enough to be heard.

The congress kept busy for days. A federal union was formed which might have the power to make treaties of peace or alliance; declare war, and regulate trade.

A federal union

The patriot troops before Boston were organized as the Continental army, and the delegates pledged to send more men in homespun and buckskin into its ranks.



Who should command this new Continental army?

Who, indeed, but the hero of Fort Pitt?

The new commander-in-chief thanked the delegates for his election. “I do not think myself equal to the command I am honored with,” he said.

1775
Washington chosen
commander-in-chief
of the Continental
army (June 15)

He knew very well that he was risking his own head. If the troops he called together were defeated, he would be the first to be tried and beheaded for treason.

General Washington set out for Boston on horseback, accompanied by a few men. On their way a sweating post-boy met them.

“Another battle—at Bunker Hill!” he cried, as he reined in his mount.

1775
The battle of Bunk
Hill (June 17)

"Did we stand the fire of the regulars?" Washington eagerly asked.

"Aye, sir," was the proud reply.

"Then the liberties of the country are safe," said Washington, and he hastened on toward Boston.

Washington reaches
Cambridge (July 2)

Washington drilled his men at Cambridge as best he could until cannon and supplies might come.

1775
Ethan Allen captures
Ticonderoga
(May 10)

Ticonderoga had been captured by Ethan Allen and his "Green Mountain Boys" of Vermont. When the cannon from Ticonderoga came to Cambridge, General Gage and his army were driven out of Boston.

1776
The British leave
Boston (March 17)

Washington then went to New York to prevent the English from getting control of the Hudson and thus cutting the united colonies in two.

Meantime the Continental Congress kept in session in Philadelphia.

Thomas Jefferson from Virginia, John Adams from Massachusetts, Benjamin Franklin from Pennsylvania, Roger Sherman from Connecticut, and Robert R. Livingston from New York were appointed a committee to prepare a Declaration of Independence.

Thomas Jefferson wrote the Declaration. On the fourth day of July, 1776, John Hancock of Massachusetts, president of the congress, signed his name in large letters, "so the king of Eng-

land could read it without his spectacles."



The Declaration of Independence would be called high treason. All who signed it knew that.

"We must hang together," said Hancock, who saw that some were feeling a little weak about what they were doing.

"Yes," said Benjamin Franklin, who knew King George so well, "yes, we must hang together or we shall hang separately!"

A signal was given. And then the bell at the state-house rang out. It sounded loudly enough through the walls of Independence Hall. But to the people in the open, it sounded louder still.

Some wept in sheer fear of what might happen when the king sent troops outnumbering theirs two to one. Others cheered in wild joy, and more bells rang, and little heaps of powder sizzled and sputtered in the streets.

When Washington received a copy of the Declaration of Independence, he ordered it read at the head of each division of his troops.

The Declaration read
to the American Army
(July 6)

Washington's army was divided between New York City and Brooklyn Heights.

General Howe encamped on Staten Island, waiting for Admiral Lord Howe with his fleet. When Admiral Howe sailed up the bay he sent a despatch to "George Washington, *Esquire*." Washington refused to receive the message. Howe then wrote to "George Washington, *etc., etc., etc.*" "The and-so-forth," said the admiral, "may mean as big a title as this upstart American likes."

But Washington would not degrade his office by receiving the letter.

General Howe, with Admiral Howe's fleet and an

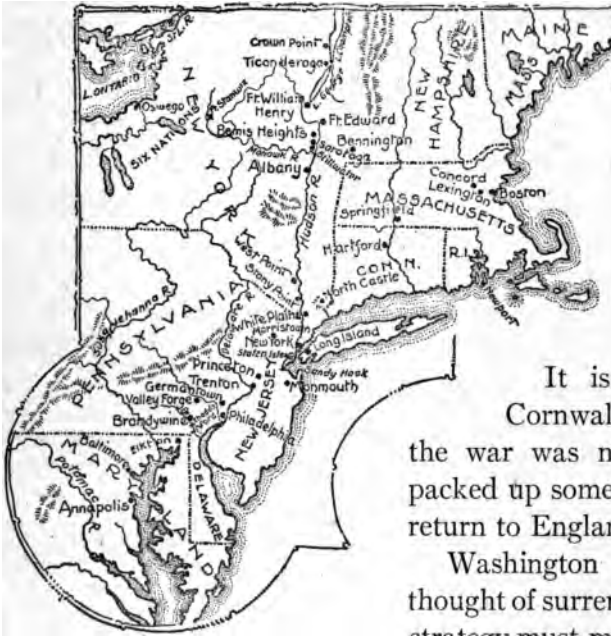
1776
New York City
surrenders to General
Howe (September 14)

army of thirty thousand British and Hessians, captured New York City.

Washington in New
Jersey

Washington, leaving a division to guard the upper Hudson, retreated to New Jersey. Lord Cornwallis pursued. Washington retreated across New Jersey toward Philadelphia.

Sometimes the rear of his army was in full view of the British van. He reached the Delaware with about three thousand men, secured all the boats for miles, and crossed the river.



It is said that General Cornwallis was so sure that

the war was near its close that he packed up some of his equipments to return to England at an early day.

Washington had not the least thought of surrender; but he knew that strategy must make up for strength.

Cornwallis carelessly scattered his army in divisions on the east side of the Delaware. Washington kept his men together on the west side.

On Christmas night Washington crossed the half-frozen river. Boat after boat struggled with ice and the swift-flowing current. The Americans drew up in line on the opposite shore and marched to Trenton, nine miles away. They captured a division of Hessians who were stupidly sleeping off their Christmas drinks.

Washington captures
the Hessians at
Trenton
(December 26)

During the month of January, Washington went into winter quarters at Morristown.

1777
Washington goes into
winter quarters at
Morristown
(January)

All Europe was watching the struggle of proud England with her colonies. You may be sure France and Spain were never weary of watching the fray.

When Benjamin Franklin was sent by Congress to France to urge King Louis XVI to acknowledge the independence of the colonies, he was well received at court.

Benjamin Franklin
at the French court

But King Louis was not at all sure that the thirteen little states could hold together, even if he should call them a nation and help them with money and men. He said he would wait and see what would happen.

The young Frenchman, Marquis de Lafayette, could not wait for his king's permission. He fitted out a ship at his own expense and sped away with some friends to America.



THE MARQUIS
DE LAFAYETTE
1757 - 1834

General Howe sailed down from Staten Island to Chesapeake Bay to capture Philadelphia. Washington met Howe at the Brandywine River, but was badly defeated.

1777
The battle of the
Brandywine
(September 11)

Howe occupied Philadelphia, and Washington went again into winter quarters at Valley Forge, twenty miles away. His troops were half-starved and half-clad, and the weather was very severe.

1777-1778
Valley Forge

Young Marquis de Lafayette kept hoping that something would happen to induce his king to send over money and men. Washington waited for news from the north, where the British were fighting to control the Hudson.

At last the news came. And what news it was! The

1777
Burgoyne's surrender
at Saratoga
(October 17)

British General Burgoyne had surrendered his army to General Gates at Fort Saratoga. Six thousand men, with vast supplies, had laid down their arms. Among them were several members of Parliament.

The news of the British defeat at Saratoga traveled to far-away France. Benjamin Franklin needed few words then to persuade the French king to give aid.

Money and ships were soon on the way; but Washington had no means of knowing that. Without steamships or cables, it took a long time for news to come over the sea.

The patriots at Valley Forge were in rags. The snow was reddened with the blood from their feet as they walked. Sometimes for days together they were without a morsel of bread in the camp.

The Quakers

Few of the Quakers of Penn's land took an active part in the war. Their religion forbade it. Yet the most of these good people supported the patriot cause.

One Quaker farmer carried provisions to the camp. He returned home in high spirits and said to his wife: "George Washington will succeed!"

"What makes thee think so, Isaac?" asked she.

"I have heard him pray, Hannah, out in the woods. The tears fell fast down his cheeks. The Lord will hear his prayer, Hannah. Thee may rest assured He will!"

The French ships
arrive
Captain John Paul
Jones

Spring came. The opposing armies moved again.

French ships sailed into American ports. Some English ships entered, too. But John Paul Jones, a young patriot seaman, with a squadron of five ships, darted into the Irish Channel as boldly as did Sir Francis

Drake into the harbor of Lisbon.¹ He set fire to shipping and sunk so many vessels that a part of the royal navy was kept at home defending the British coast.

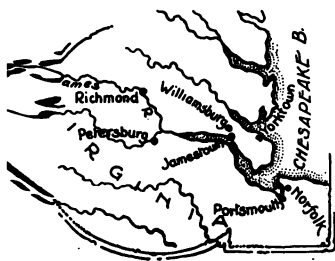
Patrick Henry, governor of Virginia, sent George Rogers Clark to the West with some troops. Clark floated down the Ohio from Pittsburg. He seized Kaskaskia,² Vincennes and the other British posts north of the river, except Detroit. If Clark's expedition had not succeeded, Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Wisconsin, Michigan, and a part of Minnesota might even now be a part of Canada.

1778
George Rogers
Clark wrests the
country north of t
Ohio from the
British

Meantime, the backwoodsmen from beyond the Blue Ridge, in coonskin caps and buckskins, routed the red-coats and Tories at King's Mountain, South Carolina.³ With weapons of all shapes and sizes they kept smiting the foe right and left.

1780
American victory
King's Mountain
(October 7)

And so the struggle went on until one proud day Washington gathered almost his entire army around Yorktown, Virginia. General Cornwallis lay there entrenched with an army of eight thousand men.



A French fleet cut off the British from escape by the sea.

Washington's patriots and his French allies hemmed in the British by land.

Cornwallis laid down his arms. Many Tories of Virginia fled to Canada. Lord Fairfax, now very old and worn, wept when he heard of the British surrender, and died shortly after—some said of a broken heart.

1781
Surrender of
Cornwallis
(October 19)

When the news of defeat reached England, the

¹ See p. 24.

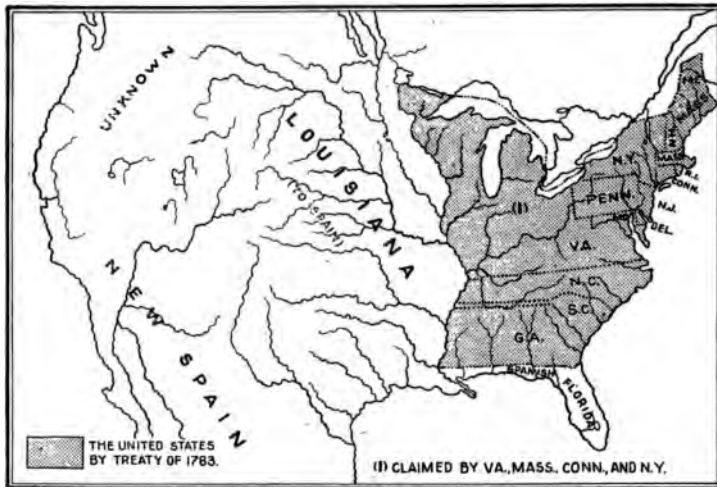
² See map, p. 123.

³ See map, p. 180.

House of Commons refused to vote money to continue the war with their kinsmen, and King George was forced to ask for peace.

1783
The treaty of peace
signed at Paris
(September 3)

John Adams of Massachusetts, John Jay of New York, and Benjamin Franklin of Pennsylvania, met the British commissioners at Paris and concluded a treaty.



England recognized the independence of the United States; she ceded the Floridas to Spain and the rest of her land east of the Mississippi to the United States. Only Canada and Nova Scotia remained of all she had boasted as hers.

Thousands of American Tories, ashamed and afraid to dwell in the new republic, emigrated beyond the St. Lawrence.

The American army disbanded. The British fleet sailed away.

Washington bade farewell in New York to the offi-

cers of his army, and hastened home to Mount Vernon which he had visited only once in eight long years.

Washington returns
to Mt. Vernon

It seemed as if the great Virginian's work was done; but work still remained. He had been first in war, and now he was to be first in peace.

The Continental Congress called the states together for the purpose of forming a more perfect union. The convention was to meet at Philadelphia, with closed doors, until a constitution should be written.

1787
Constitutional
Convention at
Philadelphia (May)

All the states, except Rhode Island, were represented in the Constitutional Convention.

George Washington was there, and was elected president of the convention. Benjamin Franklin was there, and Alexander Hamilton and Roger Sherman and James Madison and many other strong, able men; but there were almost as many different opinions about what the new union should be as there were men.

George Washington
elected president of
the convention



BENJAMIN FRANKLIN
1706-1790

James Madison drew up a sketch for a constitution, which was adopted after many changes and much debate.

James Madison
draws up a
constitution

The Constitution of the United States provided for a president and a vice-president, to be elected every four years, a congress,¹ and a supreme court.

The president
The congress
The supreme court

No one had ever known a government like that before; some said the states would never adopt it.

Washington, as president, was the first member to sign his name. He held the pen in his hand. "Should

1787
The signing of the
constitution
(September 17)

¹ Congress is the law-making body. It has a Senate elected by the legislatures of the states and a House of Representatives elected by the people.

the states reject this excellent constitution," he said, "the probability is that an opportunity will never again offer to cancel another in peace. The next will be drawn in blood."

The states ratify the constitution

After all had signed the document, it was submitted by the Continental Congress to the states. There was a great deal of talking; but in the end the states ratified the constitution and elected a new Congress whose first task would be to count the votes for a president and a vice-president.



George Washington
elected president of
the United States

GEORGE WASHINGTON
1732-1799

Everybody said that George Washington, who had saved the Union, would be president, and that is just what happened; and for vice-president Congress chose John Adams of Massachusetts—a sturdy patriot and a famous diplomat.

1789
Washington's
inauguration
(April 30)

Washington was inaugurated at New York, the first capital of the new republic. He was dressed in a brown suit of American manufacture, white silk stockings, and shoes with silver buckles; his hair was powdered and tied in a silk bag, and a sword hung at his side.

He stood on the balcony of Federal Hall, high above a vast crowd of people, who cheered while he bowed again and again. When he had taken the oath, the people tossed their cocked hats and fluttered their scarfs and



THE WASHINGTON
MONUMENT

kerchiefs, and cheered for George Washington, president of the United States.

Four years later, Washington was inaugurated for a second term; but when he was asked to stand for election a third term, he firmly refused the honor.

A second term

In his farewell address he urged the states to keep peace with one another, and to obey the laws they themselves had made.

1796
Washington's farewell
address (September)

When he returned to Mount Vernon he bore with him the love and respect of the whole young nation he had done so much to create and maintain.

Two years later he died and was buried at Mount Vernon. At the modest tomb, on the banks of the Potomac, some of the greatest men of the world have paid reverence to the memory of George Washington—"first in war, first in peace, first in the hearts of his countrymen!"

1799
Death of Washington
(December 14)

ANDREW JACKSON THE UPHOLDER OF THE UNION

1767-1845

1767
h of Andrew
son in North
olina (March 15)

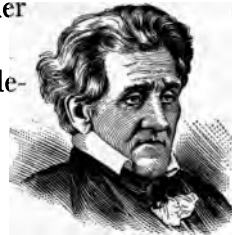


WHEN Andrew Jackson was born, the English Parliament had already laid a tax on tea imported into the American colonies. The Jacksons were Scotch-Irish. They had been in America only two years and lived on a little clearing in the pine woods of North Carolina.

Jacksons remove
outh Carolina

Mr. Jackson died before Andrew was born, and as soon as the baby was old enough, Mrs. Jackson crossed into South Carolina to live with her brother.

Little "Andy" grew to be a freckle-faced, red-haired lad, with bright blue eyes and a tall, slim frame. His mother spun flax to earn money enough to send him to school.



ANDREW JACKSON
1767 - 1845

Andy did not study very well at school, but he showed no end of pluck in play. "He's so little, we can throw him three times out of four," said his mates, "but he'll never *stay* thrown."

He climbed to the very tips of the pine trees; he dug into the sandy black soil to see what wriggling creatures were there; sometimes he trudged with tired but eager feet along the emigrant trail toward the west.

He loved to meet the trappers who had climbed the mountains from the west. They had wild game slung across their shoulders, and from their belts dangled dried skins which they were going to exchange for things they could not find in the wilderness—pepper and sugar and coffee. Andy was sure they were not going to buy tea.

Trappers from the west



A TRAPPER

The gruff old blacksmith in the shop near his uncle's house had told him all about tea. It was made from dried leaves brought from India by the English East India Company. It went first in great boxes to England and then was shipped to America to be brewed for a drink.

Formerly the trappers from beyond the mountains had bought a little bag of tea whenever they came to town; but now they wouldn't touch it.

Nobody but Tories drank tea. That was because King George had laid a tax on tea in order to collect money unjustly from the Americans.

Tax on tea

The old blacksmith said that if you were not a Tory you were a Whig. And so Andy was a Whig.

Tories and Whigs

One day he followed wagons and horsemen and a crowd of people on foot to the courthouse. He heard talk about a Declaration of Independence. Andy was only nine years old. He didn't understand just what a Declaration of Independence was, but when he saw how Whigs rejoiced and Tories scowled, he was sure it was a good thing, and so he threw up his cap of coon-skin and shouted with all his might.

1776
The Declaration of
Independence signed
(July 4)

Word came that war was raging in the north. Then word came that the British were coming south, and

Andy hung about the smithy to watch the Whigs of Carolina fashion swords out of old saws, and melt pewter mugs into bullets.

The Whigs said the king's troops had failed to get control of the Hudson River, and had failed to subdue the middle colonies, but that now they were on their way to attempt to conquer Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia, and to join them all to Florida, which belonged to the king.



1778
Savannah, Georgia,
surrenders to the
British
(December 29)
1780
Charleston, South
Carolina, surrenders
(May 12)

When at last Savannah¹ surrendered, Andy fixed a scythe to a pole to be ready; when Charleston¹ surrendered, he mounted his horse and rode off with a party of scouts.

Tarleton, a British general, frightened many of Jackson's old neighbors into joining his army, and pinned red rags on their coats. But no red rag was pinned to Andy Jackson, though he was only thirteen years old. He fought until he was captured, and still remained unsubdued.

When a haughty British officer ordered him to black some boots, he stood proudly up and said: "Sir, I am a prisoner of war. I refuse to do the work of a slave."

¹ See map.

The officer struck him on the hand with his sword, and he carried the scar and the desire for revenge all the rest of his life.

The boy was thrown into a prison pen near Camden,¹ where he half starved, and nearly died with the small-pox; but his mother, hearing of his wretched plight, secured his release and took him home.

Andrew Jackson a prisoner near Camden South Carolina

Good news came from Yorktown, Virginia, before Andy was quite strong again. George Washington had marched down from the north, and the British general, Cornwallis, had surrendered his arms.

1781
Surrender of Cornwallis (October 19)

Then word came that England had made a treaty of peace which acknowledged the independence of the United States and had ceded Florida to the Spaniards.

1783
The treaty of peace at Paris (September 3)

The whole country, both north and south, talked about what kind of government the new United States should have.

In the midst of all the debating, Andrew Jackson decided to become a lawyer. He succeeded so well, that the very year George Washington became the first president of the republic, he was appointed public prosecutor for the western district of North Carolina.

1787
Andrew Jackson becomes a lawyer

The first settlers of this district of North Carolina had fled beyond the Blue Ridge to escape the royal governors. They had made their own laws, which they knew how to enforce with their guns. They had cleared the forests, and fought the Indians, and built palisaded towns along the swift-flowing streams.

The western district of North Carolina

Nashville on the Cumberland became the chief town. At the time Andrew Jackson arrived at Nashville, he counted eighty cabins. The young lawyer

Nashville

¹ See map, p. 180.

journeyed from court to court through the wilderness. Sometimes for days together he dared not light a fire or shoot needed game, lest he attract the red foes who ambushed along the trails.

Jackson had much to do to keep law and order on this wild frontier. There were boundary quarrels and whisky brawls and a vast deal of breaking of heads. But he made himself one with the rude pioneers and became the owner of lands and slaves.

1792
Kentucky becomes a
state (June 1)

Kentucky was admitted to the Union.

"If Kentucky can send representatives to Congress, why can't we?" said Jackson and his friends.



ALEXANDER
HAMILTON
1757 - 1804

With muskets in their hands and long knives in their belts, they pushed through the forests to Knoxville, a thriving settlement on the Holston River.

They framed a constitution for the state of Tennessee and asked Congress to admit Tennessee into the Union.

A state constitution
for Tennessee

Now there were two political parties in Congress—the Federalists and the Republicans.

The Federalists
The Republicans

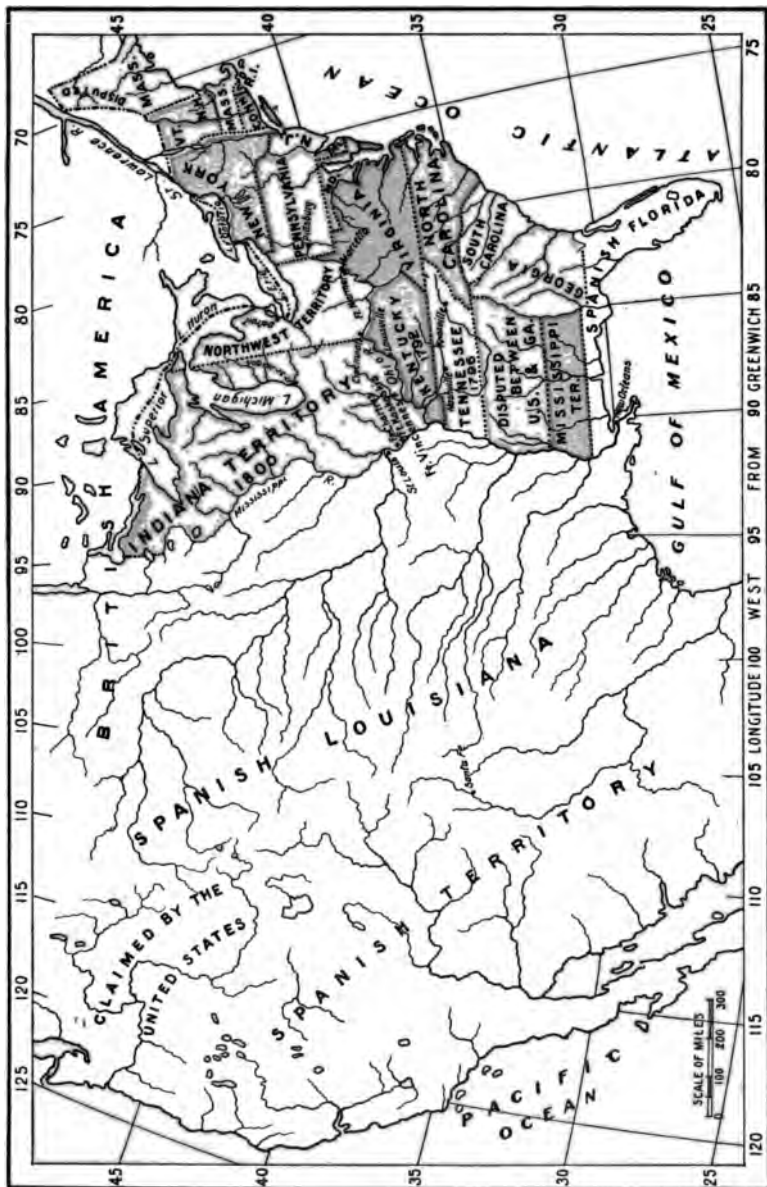
Alexander Hamilton and the Federalists said the United States government was not yet stable enough to allow western ruffians to help make laws.

But Thomas Jefferson and the Republicans said they would risk the frontiersmen any time rather than the aristocrats of the east.

Thomas Jefferson

The Republicans won in the debates in Congress. And when Tennessee was admitted as the sixteenth state, Andrew Jackson was elected to Congress.

1796
Tennessee admitted
to the Union (June 1)



UNITED STATES IN 1800

Congress at that time held sessions in Philadelphia, where the president lived in great style.

Philadelphia, the
second capital of the
United States

For aught we know, when Jackson rode into Philadelphia, dusty and worn from his long trip over the mountains, he met Washington's coach-and-four with two footmen behind in scarlet and white livery. At Washington's Tuesday afternoon levees the congressman from Tennessee stood at one side and scanned everything with his keen blue eyes. There in the center of the room stood the president in his black velvet small clothes, cutaway coat, white silk stockings, with buckles at knee and shoe, and a three-cornered hat under his arm.

All about the president stood Americans high in office; ministers of state from Europe, and ladies in silks with hair piled high up and powdered.

Washington believed that the head of the republic should live in a way to be respected by the courts of Europe.



THOMAS JEFFERSON
1743-1826

But Andrew Jackson did not like all this fuss and feathers a bit. He may have said to himself that if he were president, he would live in such good republican simplicity that even his big-hearted neighbors in Tennessee would not blush and stand on one foot.

That was just what Andrew Jackson himself was doing at President Washington's Tuesday levees. He stood there, over six feet tall and very lank, with a high, narrow brow and thick reddish hair that would not lie flat. His dress was peculiar and his manners odd in the midst of so much fashion.

1796
President
Washington's last
message to Congress
(September)

Jackson heard President Washington deliver in person his last message to Congress. He saw John Adams inaugurated the second president of the United States. Adams lived in the same fine style as Washington.

Appropriation for the
White House at
Washington, D. C.



JOHN ADAMS
1735 - 1826

Andrew Jackson goes
to the Senate

It was all quite too much like a king, Jackson said, and he voted in Congress against the "extravagance" of appropriating fourteen thousand dollars to furnish the new "White House," which the government was building at Washington in the District of Columbia.¹ The men of Tennessee were delighted with their congressman. They sent him to the Senate; but he soon resigned his seat to attend to private affairs.

He returns to
Tennessee

When he returned to Tennessee he brought with him pack-horses loaded with sugar, blankets, cotton, woolen goods, and many other things, which he exchanged for tallow, grain, pork, buffalo robes, and skins. These he sent from Nashville down the Cumberland, the Ohio, and the Mississippi Rivers to New Orleans, to sell for good Spanish dollars. The trip to New Orleans was more profitable than safe.

American
traders at New
Orleans



Spain then owned Florida, New Orleans, and the territory west of the Mississippi.

The Spaniards, who wanted the Indian trade skulked along the banks of the Mississippi and sank

¹ A tract of land ten miles square ceded to the National Government by Maryland and Virginia. The land west of the Potomac was ceded back to Virginia in 1846.

American flatboats whenever they could. The Spanish governor of New Orleans secretly encouraged the attacks on the boats. He wanted the Tennesseans and Kentuckians to realize how difficult it would be to trade with New Orleans unless they were under the Spanish flag. He even issued a proclamation, setting forth that his majesty, the king of Spain, would freely give large tracts of land to all settlers in west Florida and Louisiana; and that all who would swear allegiance to his majesty should have special privileges in trade.

His excellency pointed out how Americans could never hope to trade with the rich states east of them; for the mountains interfered, and there were no great rivers that ran from the east to the west. The Mississippi, he said, was their natural highway for trade; and from New Orleans goods could be shipped straight to the ports of Europe and South America.

No doubt a few pioneers were tempted to look only at the trade side of the question. But the most of them said they had just rid themselves of one king. Why take oath to another who would never understand a word they should say?

Then to the amazement of all the settlers beyond the mountains, the United States government (which they had rather despised as a weak, pompous show) spread protection around them, like a great warm cloak in bad weather.

The United States bought New Orleans and the territory west of the Mississippi as far west as the Rocky Mountains.

This is how the first national purchase came about:

1803
Purchase of Louisiana
by the United States

1801
Thomas Jefferson
becomes president

President Jefferson, who had succeeded John Adams, wanted to keep the western settlements loyal to the Union, but he saw clearly enough that they must have a cheaper way to get their products to market. He feared, too, that even if they refused to become Spanish subjects, the Spanish governor at New Orleans might annex them by force.

Jefferson accordingly resolved to make a land purchase along the Gulf of Mexico. Just about that time Spain ceded her possessions on the Mississippi to France.



NAPOLÉON BONAPARTE
1769-1821

Commissioners James
Monroe and Robert R.
Livingston at Paris

Napoleon Bonaparte, First Consul of France, was ambitious. It looked for a while as if he might yet fulfill the dreams of La Salle, and plant French cities and towns all along the great river. But when war was threatened between England and France, Napoleon knew it would be an easy thing for the English troops in Canada to seize Louisiana. Besides, he needed money to continue his wars in Europe.

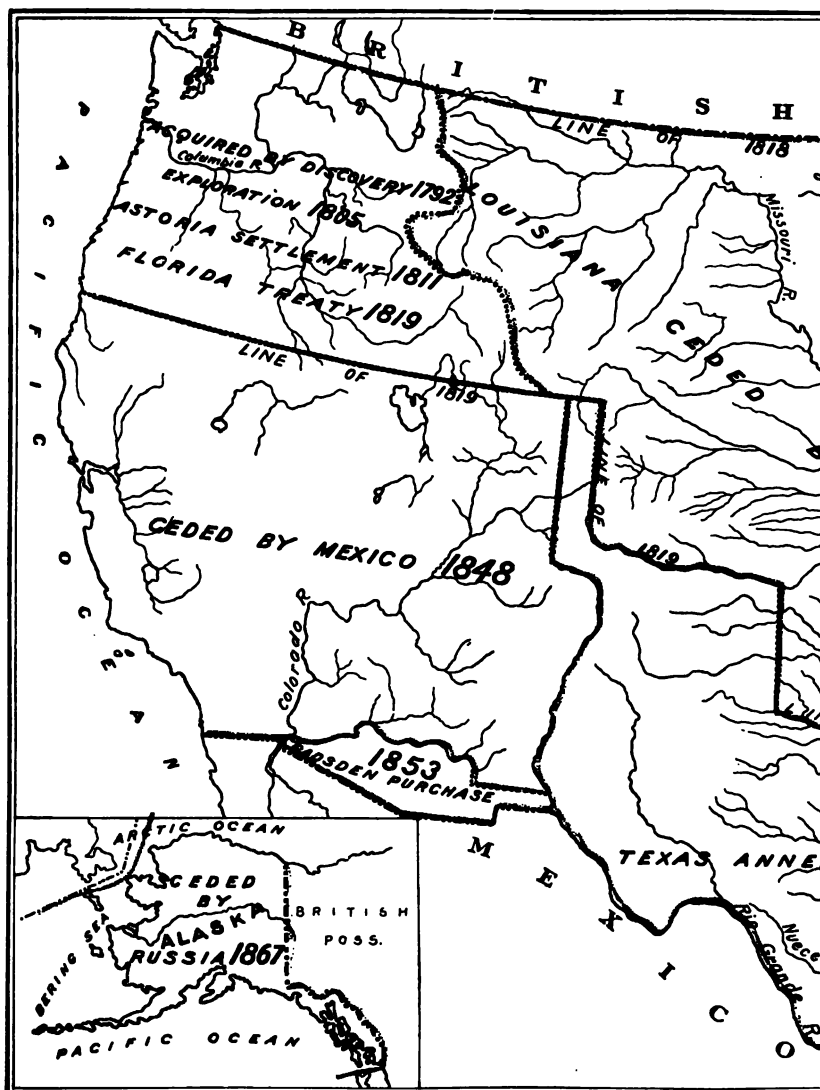
And so when President Jefferson's commissioners, James Monroe and Robert R. Livingston, presented themselves at the French court and proposed the purchase of New Orleans, Napoleon sold all that France owned on the Mississippi and west to the Rocky Mountains for fifteen million dollars.¹

Thus the "gateway" to the gulf was opened wide, and the French, Spanish, and Mexicans of New Orleans became citizens of the United States.

No one in the United States knew anything about the "desert" west of the Mississippi, and President

The "American
desert"

¹ See following map of territorial growth.





Jefferson chose Meriwether Lewis and William Clarke to explore it.

1804-1806
The Lewis and Clark
expedition

He told them to find the source of the Missouri River, cross the mountains, and reach the Pacific coast.

The young men started from the trading post of St. Louis. They found what seemed to be the source of the Missouri; they crossed the divide of the Rocky Mountains. Ragged and half starved, they found their way to the Columbia River, down which they paddled to the sea that stretched on and on to China and Japan.

The Columbia River

Lewis and Clarke were gone two years, and traveled over eight thousand miles. They brought back much information about the west; but most people believed the country to be one vast desert.

It seemed just as well that it should be a desert. "If it were fertile beyond the Mississippi," said the politicians of Jackson's day, "our citizens would wander too far. Our republic would soon be divided."

Meantime, the Ohio lands, once so far from civilization too, were attracting more attention. Ohio had been cut out of the Northwest Territory and admitted to the Union as the seventeenth state.

The Northwest
Territory

1803
Ohio admitted to
the Union

It took a long time to get news from the Atlantic coast. When a war¹ with England broke out the people of Tennessee did not hear much about it until word came that the British were about to attack New Orleans.

1812-1815
The "War of 1812"

Andrew Jackson, then commander-in-chief of the Tennessee militia, was ordered to muster two thousand men and march to Natchez to guard the southern frontier. When Jackson reached Natchez, he was told

¹ See pp. 199-202.

to disband his troops; for the British had changed their plans. During the march home the commander's stout courage won him the name of "Old Hickory", a nickname afterwards called out in very high places indeed.

1814
The Creek Indian
war



Massacres in the Creek Indian country soon set Jackson on the march again. "Until all is done, nothing is done," was Jackson's maxim in war, and he did not cease his task until the Creeks were completely subdued.

The war with England still raged in the north and east. It was about American commerce on the high seas; but Andrew Jackson really cared very little what it was about. He wanted to take part in the fray. He had an old grudge against England, which the scar on his hand would not let him forget.

And so it happened that as soon as he received orders from President Madison to defend New Orleans from a British attack, he rallied his men again.

1815
The battle of New
Orleans (January 8)

When Sir Edward Pakenham and twelve thousand redcoats landed near New Orleans, expecting to hoist the cross of St. George on its walls, they faced a huge breastwork of stones and logs and casks and cotton bales. Behind the wall Tennesseans, Kentuckians, Indians, negroes, and creoles waited the command of a tall, spare man with rough, reddish hair, who rode up and down the line.



JAMES MADISON
1751 - 1836

The British veterans stormed the rude wall. In less than half an hour, more than two thousand of them fell, with General Pakenham among the slain.

Only eight of Jackson's men had been killed in this wonderful battle of New Orleans. When the news reached Washington, there were bonfires and wild huzzas for Andrew Jackson. The huzzas grew louder still when news came from Europe that a treaty of peace had been signed before the battle took place. Men said the victory showed Europe what an American, even out in the wilderness, could do.

1814
The treaty of peace
with England
(December 24)

"And who is Andrew Jackson?" they asked.
"And what state does he hail from?"

The hero of New Orleans soon attracted attention again. The Indians, negroes, and pirates of west Florida scalped and plundered along the southern border.

Jackson said that if Spain could not keep order in Florida, he certainly would. He marched with a thousand riflemen into Spain's country and seized Fort St. Marks. He hauled down the broad red banner of Spain and put in its place the Stars and Stripes.

1817
Jackson invades
Spanish territory

The "Big Knife," as the Indians called Jackson, had acted too fast for the government at Washington, and the posts he had taken were returned to Spain.

Some said that Congress, to avoid war with Spain, should pass a vote of censure on the general; but he was too popular for that to be done.

The raid into Florida showed the Spanish king how useless it was to try to keep Florida, and he sold it the following year to the United States for five million dollars.¹

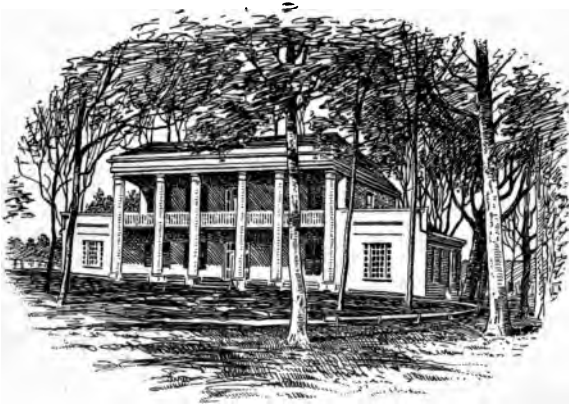
1819
The purchase of
Florida

¹ See map of territorial growth, between pp. 186-187.

Governor Jackson of
Florida

Jackson was appointed the first governor of Florida. He marched into Pensacola, where the Spanish governor lived. The Spaniards, whose lands had been sold by the king, filled ships in the harbor with their household goods and set sail for Cuba. And so American rule began in what had been a foreign province.

Governor Jackson did not remain long in Florida. He returned to his home, the Hermitage—a comfortable brick house near Nashville.



President Monroe
visits Nashville

THE HERMITAGE

Jackson often drove to Nashville in a carriage drawn by four iron-gray horses, with black servants in livery. The people of Tennessee thought he was very grand indeed.

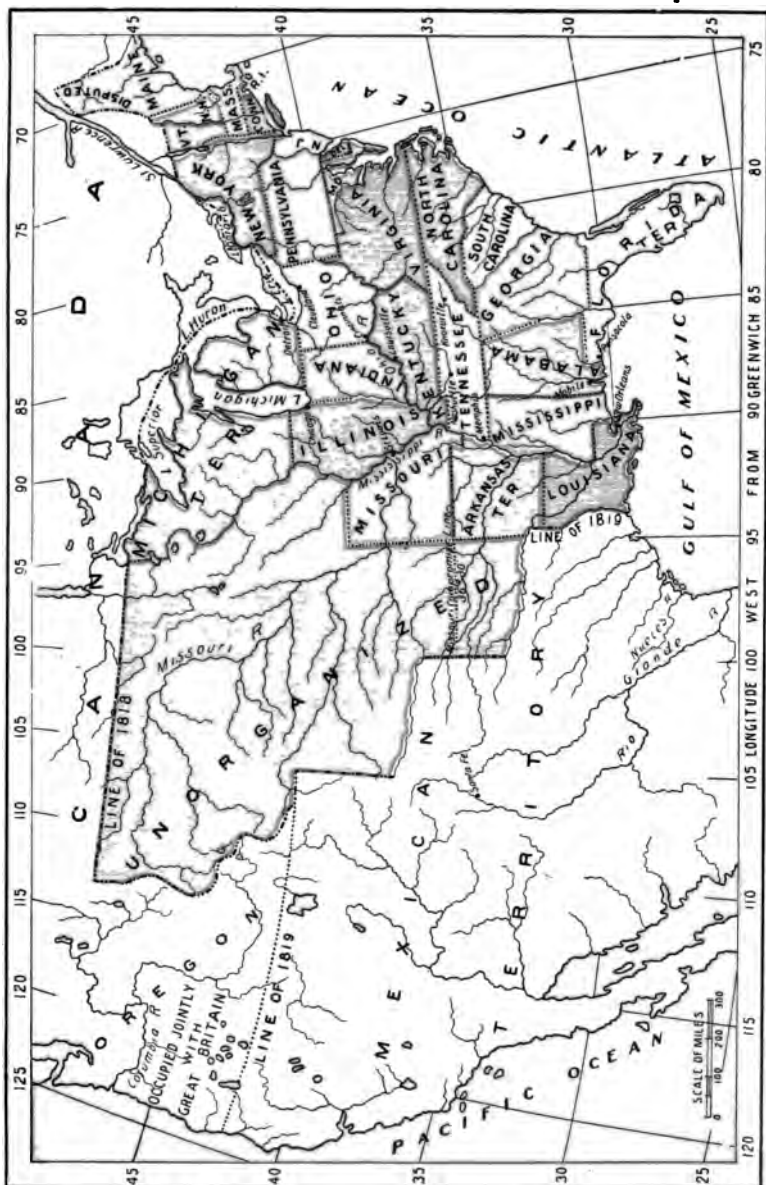
When President Monroe visited Nashville, a ball was given in his honor; but it was really Jackson who was the hero of the ball. He was taller than the president and dressed in full regimentals.

“Ah, see our general!” whispered the ladies. “He surpasses all in the room.”

Meantime Indiana had been admitted into the Union as the nineteenth state, then Mississippi, then Illinois and then Alabama and Missouri; so that over half as many states as were in the original Union now lay to the west of the Alleghany Mountains.

“The East has had all the presidents,” said the bustling West. “Let us have a president!”

1816
Indiana admitted to
the Union
1817
Mississippi
1818
Illinois
1819
Alabama
1821
Missouri



UNITED STATES IN 1830



Ah, who from the west could win? Who? Who, indeed, but "Old Hickory"? Who but the "Big Knife" of the Indians? Who but the "hero of New Orleans and Florida"?

Jackson merely laughed at first at the very idea of being a president.

"No, no," he said, "I can command a body of troops in a rough way, but I am not fit to be president."

In the west the friends of Jackson hurraed for "Old Hickory". In the east the best politicians began to talk about what a champion the boastful, pushing west would be for the party that had its support.

And so it came about that the plain, blunt soldier from the frontier was nominated, and was elected the seventh president of the United States.

1828
Andrew Jackson
elected president

President Jackson had warm friends and bitter enemies. There were many questions in dispute between the political parties. One of these was the tariff question.

"Away with wares made in Europe!" cried the manufacturers of New England and the middle states. "Put a high tax on the manufactures of other nations, and give us a chance to make things ourselves!"

The voters in the southern states opposed a tax on manufactured articles because they did not manufacture anything. They wanted their cotton, tobacco, rice, and indigo to purchase manufactured articles on the best terms possible.

1828
A high protective
tariff bill passed
by Congress

Whenever Congress passed measures President Jackson thought were not wise for the country, he vetoed them, which he had a perfect right to do. But

The president's veto

if Congress passed the measures again by a vote of two-thirds, they became the law, even without his consent.

Now Jackson did not like the high tariff. His friends in the south said he would support them if they refused to allow taxes to be collected at their ports by the government officers.

But President Jackson said to himself that since the high tariff had become a law of the land, he must enforce it in every state in the Union, whether he liked it or not. That was what he had been elected by the people to do.

The members of Congress from the southern states invited him to a banquet. He heard some of the guests say that if Congress did not change the tariff law, the states that didn't like the law could withdraw from the Union.

Jackson knew such a course would divide the whole republic into many quarreling republics. He knew that it meant to open the way for England or France or Spain to conquer these weak little republics, one by one, and make dependencies of them.

President Jackson's
famous toast

He kept thinking and thinking as he ate, but he did not join in the talk around him. When he was called upon to offer a toast, he arose. Every man at the table listened eagerly. All thought he would be sure to say something against the tariff. But he lifted his glass, and exclaimed: "*Our Federal Union—it must be preserved!*"

Dismay, then, was pictured on every face; and for the rest of the evening not a word was openly said about the tariff.

South Carolina kept on agitating the question of tariffs until her governor ordered out the state militia to prevent the officers of the United States from collecting the revenues in her ports.

South Carolina
opposes the revenue
collectors

When the president heard of the treasonable act he sent two warships to Charleston to assist in collecting the revenues; and thus he won another name: "The Upholder of the Union."

1832
President Jackson
sends men-of-war to
Charleston

President Jackson served eight years in office. He grew more and more popular with the common people.

He forced the French to pay large indemnities for injuries to our merchantmen on the sea. He sent armies to Wisconsin and to Georgia to make war on the hostile Indians. He advised Congress to set apart an Indian territory¹ west of the Mississippi, and when this was done he removed the Cherokees of Georgia to that land.

Even his bitterest enemies said that he was honest and fearless in what he believed to be right. And somehow he always knew how "to get the better" of his enemies.

When Harvard College, out of respect for his service to the nation, made him a Doctor of Laws, his enemies in the great audience whispered: "Why, Jackson can hardly write his own name. And Doctor of Laws is a title for scholars!"

Jackson made a
Doctor of Laws

A learned professor made a long, long speech in Latin. People were smiling all over the hall. Everybody knew well enough that "Old Hickory" upon the platform did not know a word the professor was saying to him.

¹ See map, p. 218.

When the Latin speech, was over, a mischievous student called out: "Some Latin from the new Doctor of Laws!"

The old hero arose; he bowed very politely and stepping forward, said: "E Pluribus Unum!"

It was the motto Benjamin Franklin had put on the American seal. Every schoolboy in America knows that it means "One made out of many."

Cheers rent the air for the "Upholder of the Union", who had become a Doctor of Laws; and the most famous scholars hurried to the platform to shake his hand.

When his second term was over, General Jackson retired to the Hermitage. Twelve years later he died, white haired and bent from years of faithful service to his country.

1845
Death of Andrew
Jackson (June 8)

DANIEL WEBSTER

THE DEFENDER OF THE CONSTITUTION

1782-1852



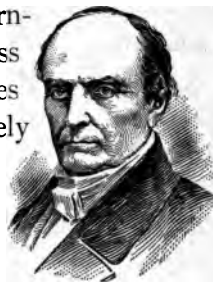
DANIEL WEBSTER was born at Salisbury, among the hills of New Hampshire, at exactly the time when the new republic of the United States was at its greatest peril.

1782
Birth of Daniel
Webster
(January 18)

The thirteen states were loosely bound together, and the Continental Congress was all the national government there was. The delegates in the congress obeyed their own state governments. The small states were jealous of the larger ones, and there were rarely any two agreed about anything.

The Continental
Congress

England predicted that soon one commonwealth after the other would be knocking at the door of Parliament for protection against her neighbors.



DANIEL WEBSTER
1782 - 1852

The Continental Congress had borrowed money from France, Holland, and Spain; yet when the congress tried to tax the states to raise money, there were riots.

National debts to
foreign countries

Some English papers took delight in saying that Americans were anarchists and would never pay debts to nations ruled by kings.

"See!" said the Tories who had escaped to Canada. "See, what a ridiculous spectacle! Didn't we say a republic would be the rule of a mob?"

Tories

"We must have a king and a standing army!"

cried the Tories who had managed to remain in the country.

Washington offered
a crown by some of
his officers

Some officers spoke to General Washington about accepting a crown, but the great patriot would not listen to such a proposition. He disbanded his army and retired to his farm at Mount Vernon.

1783
Final treaty of peace
with England signed
(September 3)

When the final treaty of peace was made with England each colony was mentioned separately as if no Union existed. Even to thousands of loyal soldiers who had returned to their blackened towns and weedy farms there seemed to be no government at all.

And while the masses of the people debated at the plow handles and in the taverns and shops about what should be done, the great leaders of the new republic—Washington, Patrick Henry, Alexander Hamilton, James Madison, Benjamin Franklin, and others were writing letters to one another about how they might save the Union.

1787
The constitutional
convention at
Philadelphia (May)

When a constitutional convention¹ met at Philadelphia, people began to talk again.

Some said the convention should agree upon a king. An American king for an American nation—that would make everything safe.

Others said they could not give up the idea of a republic; but the merchants and fishermen of New England and the middle states should form one republic, the planters of the south another, and the pioneers beyond the mountains a third.

Meanwhile within the convention there were different opinions about what would strengthen the Union.

After months of debate behind closed doors the

¹ See p. 175.

delegates signed a constitution which the Continental Congress submitted to the states.

The constitution
signed (September 17/

Some day you will be sure to read this constitution; for it is the same, with a few amendments, that we have today.

People throughout the colonies read the articles one by one and then began talking again. There had never been anything in the history of the world quite like this constitution.

Even some of the patriots did not agree with all of it. Patrick Henry disliked to have his state bound up so tightly with the others; and Samuel Adams, the hero of the "Tea Party", feared to have just one government for states of so many sizes and shapes.

Captain Webster, up in the New Hampshire hills, talked it over with his little son Daniel. But whatever the captain's doubts may have been, he was quite content when his commander-in-chief became president.

Captain Ebenezer
Webster



Captain Webster had served under Washington in the Continental army. The captain's most thrilling story was about the treason of Benedict Arnold.

Arnold was a handsome and brave young soldier. He had been General Washington's trusted friend. He married a rich Tory's daughter and commanded some colonial troops at Philadelphia, where he lived in style in the old mansion of William Penn.¹

BENEDICT ARNOLD
1741-1801

When Arnold obtained command of West Point on the Hudson, he agreed secretly with the British to

Benedict Arnold's
treason

¹ See illustration, p. 139.

sell the fort, which would give them command of the river and thus cut the united colonies in two. The treason was discovered, but the traitor escaped to the British lines.

"Whom can I trust now?" Washington had cried out, when he heard of the plot.

Daniel never tired of hearing the story, and how the great commander had taken his father's hand and said very seriously: "Captain Webster, I believe that I can trust you!"

The honest captain said there were still traitors within the new states who must be watched. But days, weeks, and months went by. The Union became stronger and stronger. Farmers quit talking, to set their plows to the furrows, and bountiful harvests came.

Before the first year of the republic had passed, Daniel had a high opinion, indeed, of the new constitution.

Daniel Webster buys
a "constitution"
handkerchief

He saved up his pennies. When he had twenty-five cents, he bought a handkerchief at a cross-roads store near his home. It was a wonderful handkerchief, with the whole constitution printed upon it. And he learned it by heart, word for word, though he was only eight years old. Years after, as you will see, Daniel Webster understood the national laws so well that he won for himself the name of the "Defender of the Constitution".

The Defender of the
Constitution

Daniel was so frail in health that he could not do the hard work on the farm. He spent his time fishing and roaming through the woods, and reading every book he could get.

When he was fourteen he was sent to Phillips Exeter

Academy. The principal of the school began his examination for entrance by asking him to read a passage from the Bible. Daniel's voice was so musical and his reading so fine that he was not interrupted until he had read the whole chapter.

1796
Daniel goes to an
academy

He was admitted to the school, where he mingled with the sons of rich and well-educated people. Some of the boys made fun of his plain, ill-fitting clothes. Perhaps that was the reason he could never stand up to speak "pieces".

He would commit his speech to memory, and practice it by himself until he knew every word. But when the teacher called his name he just sat on the bench, his large head bent down, his thin face very pale, and his eyes staring straight at the floor.

His first failures in
public speaking

When Daniel was fifteen he went to Dartmouth College, where he conquered his shyness so well that for the following Fourth of July the citizens of Hanover selected him to pronounce the public oration.

1798
He goes to Dartmouth
College

In this first great speech Webster spoke of patriotism, the greatness of the American Constitution, and the need of the union of all the states.

1800
A Fourth of July
oration

After leaving Dartmouth he studied law. Then he was elected to Congress just at the time that the Union was put to a very hard task.

Webster studies law

Congress declared war against England. This is the way the war came about:

1813
Enters Congress
(May)

England had been trying to oppress Americans on the sea as she had once oppressed them on land.

England had the strongest navy in the world, and claimed the right to impress into her service any sailors

England's impressment
of American sailors

who were even supposed to have been born under her flag.

British cruisers held up American ships on the high seas without license or leave. If the sailors spoke English they were often impressed in spite of proof that they were American born. Sometimes the whole crew were taken and the ship allowed to drift away with its valuable cargo.

And so war was declared against England to protect American commerce.

American troops invaded Canada. They were badly defeated and the forts north of the Ohio were surrendered to the British.

But there were American victories on the sea from the very beginning. The little patriot fleet sailed boldly out to meet the great English navy. Someone afterwards said it was like David sallying forth to meet the giant Goliath.

Captain James Lawrence fought an engagement off the coast of Cape Ann. Every officer on deck was either wounded or killed. Lawrence himself was struck with a bullet. "Don't give up the ship!" he called, as he was carried dying down the hatchway.

"Don't give up the ship" became the motto on land and on sea. Commodore Perry collected a rude fleet on the shores of Lake Erie. He named his flagship the *Lawrence*, and hoisted at its staff a flag with the motto "*Don't give up the ship*".

1812-1815
The War of 1812

The American navy

Captain Lawrence



Commodore Perry

In a battle on Lake Erie, the *Lawrence* was soon riddled by British bullets. As the hull was sinking, Perry seized the flag and entering a small boat crossed in a tempest of shot and shell to another American vessel. The battle raged on until the British fleet surrendered—"two ships, two brigs, one schooner, and a sloop!"

1813
Perry's victo
Lake Erie
(Septemb

Out on the open sea, Americans were winning trophies too. Within six months after the war began they captured the *Alert*, *Guerrière*, *Frolic*, *Macedonian*, and *Java*—more ships than proud England had lost in twenty years of war with the half of all Europe!

Success on the sea inspired new zeal on land. William Henry Harrison defeated the enemy on the Thames River,¹ and it looked for a time as if Canada might be annexed to the United States.

Victory of W
Henry Harri
the Thames
(October

Then defeat came again. England sent over a vast fleet to blockade the coast. The sea grew white with the enemy's sails. Not an American merchantman dared sail from port.

The coast bl

The idle vessels lay at anchor, their mastheads protected with tar barrels—"Madison's nightcaps," the angry New Englanders called them.

"Madison's

The merchants of New England had opposed the war from the first. Even Daniel Webster had thought the abuses of England might be avoided without resorting to arms.



A part of the British fleet entered Chesapeake Bay. A detachment of redcoats captured Washington and set fire to the public buildings. President Madison and the government officials fled from the capital. It was all very shameful, indeed.

1814
The burning
Washington,
capital (Aug

¹ See map, p. 200.

Some New Englanders began to say that since the government did not seem able to protect their commerce, they must try to protect it themselves.

The Hartford
Convention

They called a convention of the Puritan states to meet at Hartford, Connecticut. It was said the delegates would plot to set up a government of their own. Webster was urged to take part in the Hartford Convention; but he loved the Union too well; and he persuaded the New Hampshire delegates to stay at home.

American victories soon came again.

1814
The treaty of peace
at Ghent
(December 24)

Then peace was made, though after the treaty, as we have seen,¹ a great British army was defeated at New Orleans.

1815
The battle of New
Orleans
(January 8)

It was winter when the news of peace arrived. Troops fired salutes into the frosty air. Sleighs were driven through the streets of the cities with PEACE on the drivers' hatbands. Down at the wharves in all the ports of the coast there was bustle and good cheer, "Madison's nightcaps" were taken from the sleeping mastheads, and ship after ship, with cargoes piled to the limit, sailed prosperously forth.

"The Star Spangled
Banner"

Soon every state in the Union was singing "The Star Spangled Banner", which Francis Key had written while a prisoner with the British on Chesapeake Bay.

Daniel Webster loved to sing the song in his rich bass voice. No doubt it strengthened even his great love for the Union, as it strengthens ours today when we sing it.

The Union stronger
than ever

The Union seemed stronger than ever after the War of 1812. There was really but one political party,

¹ See p. 188.

and when James Monroe was elected president, an "era of good feeling" began.

The "era of good feeling"

After the close of the war, Daniel Webster moved to Boston to practice law. A few years later he was elected to Congress from Massachusetts.

Webster moves to Boston to practice law

In Congress

The White House at Washington had been repaired; the capitol had been rebuilt, and fine chambers were set apart for the Senate, the House of Representatives, and the Supreme Court.

There was much for the lawmakers in Washington to talk about. The government purchased the Spanish Floridas.¹ Then President Monroe acknowledged the independence of the Spanish colonies in South America. And because he knew how weak the new republics would be before the great powers of Europe, he sent a message to Congress which all Europe might read.

1819
Purchase of the Floridas from Spain

The president's message declared that the United States would view as an unfriendly act any attempt of European powers to interfere with any of the governments of people on any part of this hemisphere, and that North and South America should not further be considered subject to colonization by Europe.



JAMES MONROE
1758-1853

This "Monroe Doctrine," as you will see later on, had much effect in keeping American soil for Americans.

1823
The "Monroe Doctrine"

Now it did not take long to overcome the bad effects of the War of 1812. The benefits of the war grew more and more plain every year.

Even during the war, while raw cotton, wool, iron, and wood lay heaped on the wharves waiting to be shipped to foreign mills, our merchants began to wonder why they could not set up mills of their own.

Home manufacturing increases

¹ See map of territorial growth, between pp. 186-187.

Increase of
immigration from
Europe

Some states offered prizes for the best knives and forks and the best woven cloth of American make.

And just about the time Americans decided to try to have mills of their own, British cloth weavers, blacksmiths, miners, masons, carpenters, and other mechanics heard from the returning British soldiers what a wonderful land this was.

Presently shiploads of immigrants were coming from England, Scotland, and Ireland. One week brought fifteen hundred to five American ports. The next week only eight hundred landed, but the very next week there were over a thousand.

The "American fever" presently spread to other countries of Europe. So many people wanted to come to America that the rates were high, and only the well to do could afford to pay for the passage.

Some of these strangers, to be sure, did not find things to suit them, and went back home; but most of them set to work manufacturing wares, clearing forests, digging canals, or sowing vast prairies to grain.

Government land
sales in the West

The government was soon selling millions of dollars' worth of western lands. Thousands of farmers passed through Pittsburg on their way to their new-bought farms.

1792
Kentucky admitted
to the Union

1796
Tennessee

1803

Ohio

1812
Louisiana

Almost before the people on the coast could realize that Kentucky, Tennessee, Ohio, Louisiana, and Indiana had become states, Mississippi, Illinois, Alabama, and Missouri were admitted into the Union.

Nine states lay beyond the mountains. All over the Union new cities, towns, and villages sprang up, while the old ones kept on increasing in size and wealth.

And so it is no wonder that Daniel Webster's heart swelled with pride at the laying of the cornerstone of the Bunker Hill monument.

1825
Laying of the corner-
stone of the Bunker
Hill monument
(June 17)
The Marquis de
Lafayette

It was a great occasion. The Marquis de Lafayette,¹ the French "boy" of the Revolution, now nearly seventy years old, sat on the platform surrounded by two hundred veterans of the Revolution.

Webster's look as he arose seemed to foretell the splendor of the tribute he was about to pay to the Union for which those gray remnants of '75 had fought.² He stood nearly six feet in height. His shoulders were thrown far back, his massive head, with its broad, deep brow and coal-black eyes, was held very erect.

Webster's oration

None who heard his wonderful words ever forgot the scene. When the orator ended, more than one man rose to his feet, with tears streaming down his cheeks, to clasp the hand of another whom he had considered an enemy.



J. Q. ADAMS
1767-1848

It seemed as if the "era of good feeling" would always last. But within a year the whole country began to divide on the questions of tariff and public improvements.

Tariff and internal
improvements

John Quincy Adams, of Massachusetts, became president. He believed firmly in protective tariffs and public improvements at public expense. The majority in Congress had the same views.

1825
John Quincy Adams
succeeds President
Monroe (March 4)

A high protective tariff was accordingly laid upon cotton and woolen goods, and on some other articles imported from Europe, which Americans were trying to make.

Then, because the merchants of the east wanted to transport their wares to the growing western markets,

National improvement:

¹ See p. 171.

² See p. 167.

large sums were paid out of the treasury for public harbors, bridges, and roads.

Now the New England and middle states were trying to build up manufactories; but the southern states had enough to do with their plantations of tobacco, cotton, and rice. The New England and middle states wanted rivers bridged and mountains leveled for a path to a western market; but the southern states had the sea to carry raw products to the factories of Europe, and they wished to exchange them for low-priced goods.

And so the old Mason and Dixon's line¹ became pretty nearly the dividing line on the subject of tariff and on public improvements at national expense.

Two parties were formed from the Republican party, which had seemed so united. The members of the tariff party called themselves Nationalists, and those of the free-trade party called themselves Democrats.

The Democrats in Congress fought the high tariff with all their might. They called it the "tariff of abominations". They said, too, that public improvements at national expense were not in accord with the constitution.

When the Democrats elected Andrew Jackson president, they hoped to abolish the "tariff of abominations", but the Nationalists were still in the majority in Congress and the law remained in force.

Robert Hayne, an eloquent senator from South Carolina, declared in a great speech that if a state did not like the laws enacted by the United States government, it might nullify those laws or declare them void.

¹ See p. 138.

The Nationalists

The Democrats

1829

Andrew Jackson
resident (March 4)

Robert Hayne's
speech on
nullification"

The advocates of "nullification" said that no Nationalist could begin to answer Senator Hayne's magnificent arguments.

Daniel Webster was then in the Senate. He had only one night to prepare his reply. But he still remembered the constitution, word for word, as he had learned it on the handkerchief.

When the hour came for the debate the Senate chamber was packed with eager politicians.

Before Webster spoke, a friend anxiously said: "Daniel, it's a critical moment. It is high time the people of this country should know what the constitution is."

"Then," said the orator, "by the blessings of heaven they shall learn this day, before the sun goes down, what *I* understand it to be."

Webster spoke for hours to the mass of almost breathless listeners.

Daniel Webster's
reply to Hayne

He said that the *Continental Congress* had been a compact of states—and how well he remembered what a pitiful compact it was, with each state pulling against the others!—but that the *United States* was the government of the whole people, as if boundary lines were wiped out. In cases of dispute between sections the Supreme Court had the sole right to decide. A state, being only a part of the government, had no right to prevent the execution of national laws. Resistance to a federal law by a part of the people was rebellion.

The government of
the United States

The debate between Hayne and Webster lasted for days. People from different parts of the country heard about it, and came for miles to listen. They filled the

galleries; they invaded the floor of the Senate chamber, and the outer lobbies and doorways.

Webster's speeches on "nullification" were printed and scattered all over the Union. Boys, who afterward gave up their lives to preserve the Union, declaimed passages from them in school.

But not all who heard or read Webster's speeches became Nationalists. Newspapers and conventions in the South began to talk about "state rights".

John C. Calhoun's
speech for secession
from the Union

When John C. Calhoun argued in the Senate for state secession from the Union, Daniel Webster was ready with a reply. He had reasoned that question all out, when the Hartford Convention was whispering secession behind its closed doors.

Webster's reply to
Calhoun

And so there was another great battle of words in the Senate. Webster fought for the preservation of the Union as the cavaliers had once fought for their king.¹

He said there could be no secession. In a republic there must be obedience to the laws made by the whole people.

Meantime a convention in South Carolina declared the high tariff null and void. The state militia was ordered to prevent the public officials from collecting the national revenues at Charleston.²

Jackson sends
men-of war to
Charleston

Now President Jackson hated the tariff as much as any man in his party; but he did not believe in state rule over the United States. He sent armed vessels to Charleston, which quickly brought South Carolina to a proper respect for the law.

Jackson had no sympathy with the plans of the Nationalists for developing the country at public

¹ See p. 129.

² See p. 193.

expense. He vetoed so many laws passed by Congress that the Nationalists began to call themselves "Whigs". They said they were opposing "King Andrew", as the earlier Whigs had opposed King George.

The Nationalists call themselves Whigs

"I have been educated from my cradle," said Webster, "in the principles of the Whigs of '76."

Whigs and Democrats were soon disagreeing about nearly every public question. One subject of dispute was whether slavery should be allowed in the territories owned by the United States government.

Democrats

Party lines drawn on the slavery question

The free states of the north did not want slavery carried beyond the states where it already existed. The slave states of the south were determined to extend the system.

Daniel Webster realized the dangers to the Union through the slavery question. He stood with his party for freedom; but he was willing, like Henry Clay, to compromise for the sake of the Union.

Union, *union*, UNION was always the cry of the great Defender of the Constitution—"Liberty and Union, now and forever, one and inseparable!"

Daniel Webster helped to hold factions together until a party was formed which was strong enough to prevent disunion. But he did not live to see the great Civil War.

1852
Webster dies at
Marshfield
(October 24)

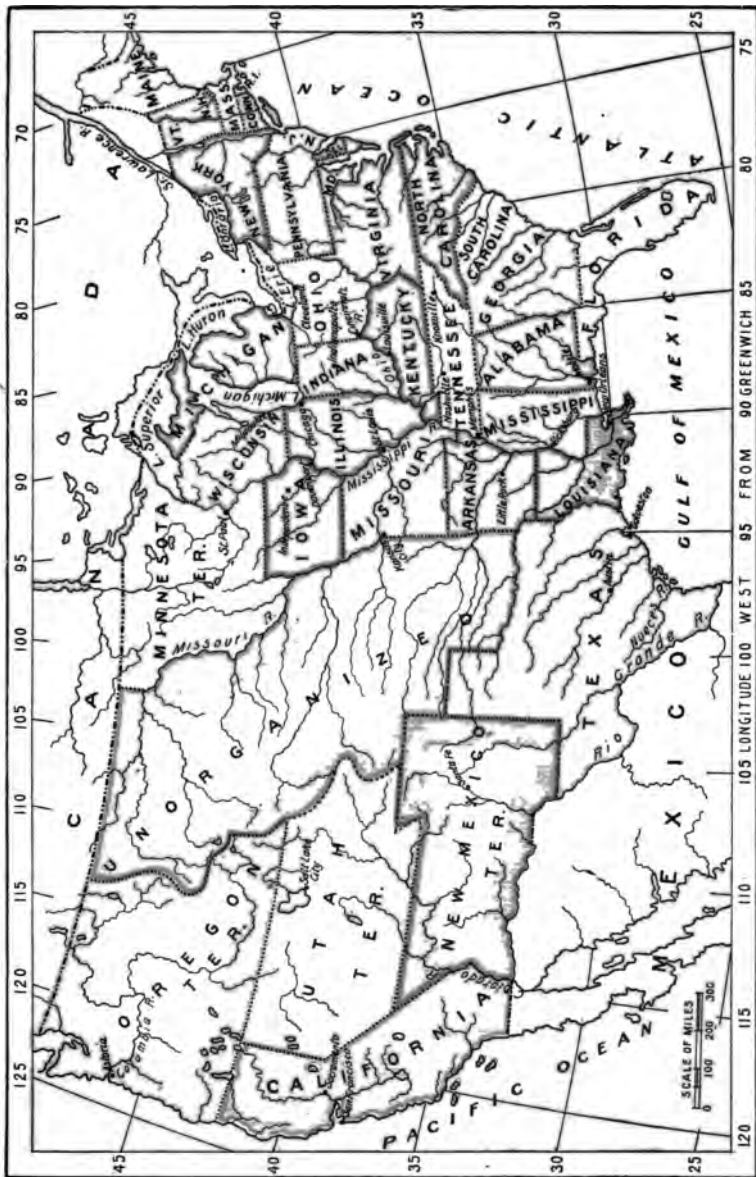
In the latter years of his life he passed much time at Marshfield, his splendid home by the sea.

It is said that when troubled with sleepless nights he would look out upon a little boat moored to the shore.

On the staff of the boat hung a lantern; and above the lantern's wavering light fluttered always the Stars and

1850
California admitted
to the Union

Stripes. There were thirteen stripes for the original states and thirty-one stars for the states then in the fold. California had been the last star pinned to the flag, and the "Star Spangled Banner" waved from ocean to ocean.



UNITED STATES IN 1850



ABRAHAM LINCOLN
THE PRESERVER OF THE UNION
1809-1865



ON February 12, 1809, in a rude cabin in Kentucky, Abraham Lincoln first saw the light. It was a cheerless room in which the baby lay; and a cheerless path seemed to stretch out before him—straight from his rough cradle hewn from a log.

The grandfather of little Abe had emigrated from Virginia because of his friendship for Daniel Boone, the pioneer of Kentucky. He had been killed by the Indians when his son, Thomas Lincoln, who was to become the father of the future president, was only six years old.

Thomas grew up in the wilderness without knowing even how to spell. He married a young girl of the settlement who was much better versed in book lore than himself. And thus it was from his mother that little Abe learned how to spell. When a traveling teacher opened a school in a near-by log house, Abe marched to the head of the class, though he was only five years old, and some of his rivals were young men and women.

When the lad was seven, the family moved to Indiana and settled about fifteen miles north of the Ohio River.

That was two years after Francis Key wrote "The Star Spangled Banner" while a prisoner on an English

1809
Birth of Abraham
Lincoln
(February 12)

1769
Daniel Boone begins
his explorations west
of the Alleghany
Mountains



ABRAHAM LINCOLN
1809-1865

1806
Thomas Lincoln
marries Nancy Hanks
(June)

Little "Abe" at the
head of the spelling
class

1816
The Lincoln family
removes from
Kentucky to Indiana

1814
"The Star Spangled
Banner" written

1815

The victory at New
Orleans (January 8)

ship in Chesapeake Bay. Just the year before the Lincolns moved to Indiana, Andrew Jackson defeated the British at New Orleans.¹ But Abe probably heard nothing about the war with England until much later on.

1816

Indiana admitted to
the Union

It was a wild country he lived in. Indiana was then a territory—though soon to become a state—and bears and other wild animals were still quite numerous.

The lad helped his father make a table and chairs from split logs; and beds from poles, covered with skins and corn husks. At night he climbed on pegs to the loft where the bark of a fox or the howl of a wolf often kept him awake. All day long he worked at clearing the forest for a corn field, or hunted wild game, or fished in a stream that ran near the cabin.

Abe was a homely lad with large ears, coarse features, and bushy hair. He pinned his shirt with thorns and fastened his deerskin leggings with strings slit from hides, and buttons made of pebbles.

The "three R's"

After a while he started to school. He walked miles through the forest to learn "readin', writin', and 'rithmetic"—the three "R's" they were called because all sounded as though they began with "r". Some of the backwoods pioneers really thought they did.

Abe wrote out his lessons at night on a pine board with a bit of charcoal. Sometimes he had a tallow candle, but more often the blaze of the logs in the open chimney was all the light there was.

The Bible

Weem's Life of
Washington

Among his books was the Bible. He read it through again and again. Another book was Weem's Life of Washington, which helped him to know something about the history of the United States.

¹ See p. 188.

When Abe was twenty-one the family packed their possessions into an ox-cart and moved into Illinois. The young pioneer helped to set up a log house on the banks of the Sangamon River a few miles from Decatur.

1830
The Lincoln family
removes to Illinois



LINCOLN'S CABIN

He was very strong in the arms. He was lank and awkward, being six feet four inches tall. That was very tall, indeed. As he felled the forest and drained the swamps and planted the corn fields, he seemed like some giant in a fairy story. The boys and girls about him must have felt like Tom Thumbs. He was a kind, big-hearted giant, however, with a pleasant word and a broad smile for everybody; though when off by himself his homely face was always sad, nobody ever knew just the reason why.

Once in a while a newspaper found its way to the settlement on the Sangamon. Abe read about President Jackson offering the famous toast: "Our Federal Union, it *must* be preserved!"¹ and about Daniel Webster's famous speeches on the constitution in reply to Senator Hayne.²

1830
President Jackson's
toast on the Union

Webster's speeches
in the Senate on the
Union

The young giant liked to talk over the news with the men on the neighboring farms. He was invited to join in wolf hunts, and in log raisings when a whole house was cut from the forest and set up in a day by many tough hands. Abe's hands were the toughest and his arms were the longest and strongest of all.

Wolf hunts and log
raisings

He grew ashamed of his buckskins, which were much too short for his legs. He ordered a pair of jean

Abe earns a pair of
jeans

¹ See p. 192.

² See p. 207.

pantaloon and split fourteen hundred rails to pay for the weaving and making.

On a flatboat to
New Orleans

After a time he found employment on a flatboat that carried hogs, corn, and hay down the Mississippi to New Orleans.

The slave auction

It is said that on one of these trips he saw slaves sold at an auction. The negroes stood in rows, like so many cattle, and were "knocked off" to the highest bidders.

Lincoln's pledge

Lincoln looked in amazement at the cruel traffic. It is said that he cried to the crew who stood near him: "Boys, let's get away from this. If I ever get a chance to hit that thing, I'll hit it hard."

Years afterward, as you shall see, Abraham Lincoln became known over the whole world as the "Liberator of Slaves".

1832
Lincoln organizes a
company for the
Indian war (April 21)

When the Black Hawk Indian war disturbed the peace of Illinois, Lincoln enlisted in the state militia. He was elected captain of his company. This pleased

him very much, and he resolved to fill the office with credit.

He knew nothing of military rules, but his men knew less. He formed them in platoon. They marched zig-zag until they came to a fence with only a narrow opening.

The young captain argued the question with himself long before he reached the critical spot. He said he shouldn't know how to order the company to form single

file. Yet if he brought his men to a standstill they would laugh in his face.



STREET IN NEW ORLEANS

They reached the fence. "Halt!" he cried. "The company is dismissed for two minutes. It will assemble again on the other side of the fence. Break ranks!"

Years afterward Abraham Lincoln, still with little knowledge of military rules, was to become the commander-in-chief of all the Union armies. He was to direct his battalions to victory while the world looked on.

Lincoln's call to command in later years

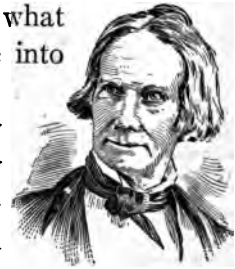
After the Indian war was over, Lincoln clerked in a store at New Salem and studied law at odd times. He slept on the counter when the tavern was full. And the tavern was often full. Thousands of immigrants were landing in America every year, and as true as the honey-bee wings its way to sweet flowers, they swarmed to the prairies of the west.

A clerk in New Salem

Abraham Lincoln helped the government surveyor measure the land for the settlers. As he dragged his chain over weary miles he kept thinking about what it meant to have the territories so rapidly made into states.

A government surveyor

He had read the speeches of Webster and Clay and Hayne and Calhoun. He understood pretty well the disputes about tariffs and public improvements at public expense, which divided the North and the South. But a new question had come up for debate.



HENRY CLAY
1777-1852

Should the territory west of the Mississippi be slave or free?

Slavery or freedom?

The territory north of the Ohio had been organized as free soil. The states of Ohio, Indiana, and Illinois held no slaves; and Wisconsin and Michigan would be free states.

1820
the Missouri
compromise

When Missouri asked to be admitted into the Union with slaves, Henry Clay offered in Congress a compromise which became a law. Under this law, known as the Missouri Compromise, Missouri was admitted with slaves, but slavery was prohibited in all remaining territory north of a line extending from the southern boundary line of Missouri.¹

The politicians of the South said the free states would go on increasing in number till they had control in Congress. Then they would set all slaves free; and plantations would grow weeds, and the millions of dollars invested in slaves would be lost.

It was all very discouraging to the slave-holding states until Texas formed a republic and was admitted into the Union with slaves, making the slave states equal in number to the free states.

A boundary dispute between Texas and Mexico brought on a war between Mexico and the United States.

1848
Treaty of peace with
Mexico signed
(February 2)

When the war was over, California and vast tracts of other Mexican territory became a part of the United States.²

Would this soil be slave or free?

1848
Discovery of gold in
California (January)

The Pacific coast seemed far away. People said that question need not trouble anybody in the least. But the treaty with Mexico had hardly been signed when reports spread abroad that gold had been found in California. Miners were washing hundreds of dollars a day from the sands.

What a rush began then to the far-away coast! White canvas-topped wagons jostled through sage brush and over the mountains; ships spread sail and

¹ See map, p. 190. ² See map of territorial growth, between pp. 186-187.

plowed through two oceans to anchor within the Golden Gate.

The little Spanish mission of San Francisco became an American town of twenty thousand inhabitants. Eighty-five thousand adventurers had made their home in the new El Dorado¹ before the year was out. The diggers of gold asked that their state be admitted into the Union free.

1850
California becomes a state

Other free states in this far-away west would soon be coming in. The slave advocates became desperate in their despair. When Kansas wished admission they were determined to prevent it from coming in free.

A few men, aided by President Buchanan, tried to force a slave clause into the Kansas state constitution in spite of the wishes of the majority of the citizens.

1857
James Buchanan becomes president (March 4)

This was carrying things so far that almost the whole north—Democrats as well as Whigs—cried out against it.

And who do you think was one of the greatest defenders of the freemen of Kansas?

It was Abraham Lincoln of Illinois.

During all the struggle since the Missouri Compromise Lincoln had been taking part in the public debates.

He had quit surveying to practice law. He had entered the Illinois legislature. He had been sent to the House of Representatives at Washington and he had joined the Republican party which had been formed by the Whigs, Free-soilers, and anti-slavery Democrats.

Abraham Lincoln becomes a politician

1856
The Republican party organized (February 22)

Lincoln became the Republican candidate for United States senator from Illinois.

Lincoln in Congress

¹ See p. 48.

His opponent was Stephen A. Douglas, who was nick-named the "Little Giant", because of his low stature and great skill in debate.

And so when the campaign in Illinois began, two giants were in the field—one very short, the other very tall; and both great in making speeches.

Although Lincoln was defeated for the United States Senate, his debate with Douglas made him famous all over the Union.

He said he did not deny the right of the slave states to hold their slaves; but the institution of slavery should not be extended into the territories.

The Republicans nominated Lincoln for president; the Democrats, Stephen A. Douglas.

And so the two giants had a battle of words again. Lincoln spoke in the largest cities of the east. One of his speeches was at Cooper Institute, New York. Horace Greeley, the New York editor, said of it: "I do not hesitate to pronounce it the very best political address to which I ever listened."

Most people in the east thought that very high praise to be given to an obscure man from the west.

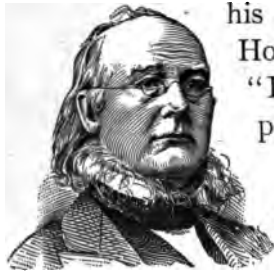
The Republicans boasted about the humble life of their candidate from the west.

There were "rail-splitting" parades, where mauls and axes were carried; and floats of log cabins, and flatboats. After the parade was over, "Honest Old Abe" stood in the flare of the torches to talk to the voters who thronged to see him and to hear him speak.



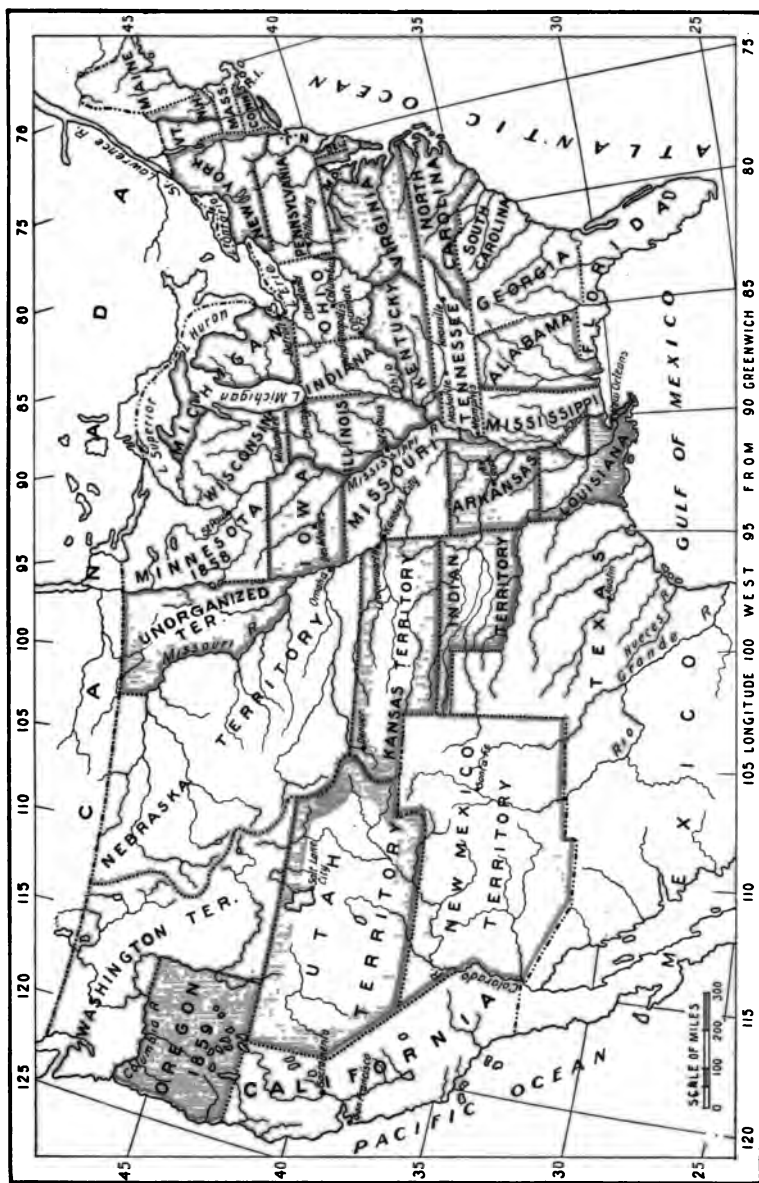
STEPHEN A. DOUGLAS
1813-1861

The Republicans
nominate Lincoln
for president
The Democrats
nominate Douglas



HORACE GREELEY
1811-1872

The campaign



UNITED STATES IN 1860

In one of his debates, Lincoln said: "A house divided against itself cannot stand. I believe this government cannot endure permanently half slave and half free. It will become all one thing or the other."



JEFFERSON DAVIS
1808-1889

The slave advocates in the south soon saw what the end would be. When Lincoln was elected president a Charleston paper marked "foreign" over the news from the north.

Abraham Lincoln
elected president

Seven southern states organized a government of their own, called the "Confederate States of America". Jefferson Davis, of Mississippi, was chosen president and commander-in-

1861
The secession of
seven states
(February 18)

chief of the Confederate army.

The state militia of South Carolina seized Castle Pinckney in the harbor of Charleston. On Washington's birthday Castle Pinckney fired guns for the Confederate salute, and across the bay Fort Sumter fired for the United States.

1861
Two salutes in
Charleston harbor
(February 22)



That same day Abraham Lincoln stopped in Philadelphia on his way to be inaugurated at Washington. He unfurled over Independence Hall¹ the flag of the Union. There were thirty-four stars then and he pledged that each star should remain in its place.

Abraham Lincoln at
Independence Hall
(February 22)

¹ See illustration, p. 168.

A few days later, on the eastern portico of the capitol, he placed his hand on the open Bible to repeat the oath. Washington and Madison and Jackson had uttered the oath when the nation was in peril.

Lincoln takes the
oath of office
(March 4)

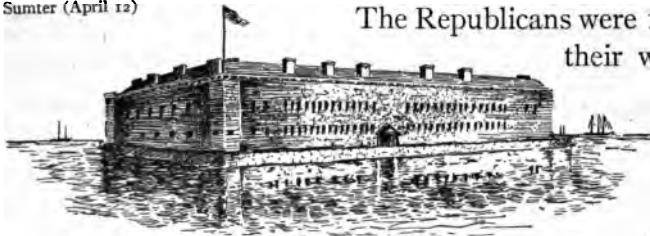
"I, Abraham Lincoln," he said, "do solemnly swear that I will faithfully execute the office of President of the United States, and will, to the best of my ability, preserve, protect, and defend the constitution."

Now, in order to protect and defend the constitution, the president is commander-in-chief of the army and navy of the United States, whose officers are trained in a military school at West Point, New York, and in a naval school at Annapolis, Maryland. In time of war he is also commander-in-chief of the militia of the states.

Military school at
West Point
Naval school at
Annapolis

Commander-in-chief Lincoln of the Union army waited anxiously to see what Commander-in-chief Davis of the Confederate army would do.

Firing on Fort
Sumter (April 12)



FORT SUMTER

In April, Confederate troops fired on Fort Sumter. The Republicans were fierce and strong in their wrath. The Democrats of the North cried out against the unnatural act, and joined hands with the Republicans to preserve and defend the Union.

Eleven States in the
Confederacy—
South Carolina
Georgia
Alabama
Mississippi
Louisiana

It is a long story how great armies met together in battle. You will read about it in a larger book. Four more states in the south seceded. Yet "Honest Old Abe" held to the flag with the thirty-four stars.

He was never a tyrant—not for one moment. He was more like a father who grieved over the mistakes of a child. Someone says he seemed to be always calling down from Washington to the South: "Come, let us reason together."

Florida
Texas
Virginia
North Carolina
Tennessee
Arkansas

The Confederate troops fought desperately for their new government. After a time their clothing became worn to shreds. Many marched without shoes. There was not enough food for all.

Lincoln saw that slave labor in some states conquered by Union arms was supplying the Confederates with food. He said states that had forfeited their own government belonged to the nation, and national territory should be free.



ULYSSES S. GRANT
1822-1885



ROBERT E. LEE
1807-1870

And so, in what is called the Emancipation Proclamation, the slaves of one state after the other became free citizens of the United States.

1863
The Emancipation
Proclamation
(January 1)

When Lincoln was elected president for a second term by the votes of the Union states, he set himself to his task again. With deep-sunken eyes, thin cheeks, and stooped frame he kept hoping for peace with the South.

1865
Lincoln becomes
president for a
second term
(March 4)

Ulysses S. Grant, commander of the Union armies, was then fighting around Richmond,¹ Virginia.

Jefferson Davis, president of the seceded states, was at Richmond, and General Robert E. Lee, commander of the Confederate armies, was defending the capital against many odds. There were sieges and marches and battles; but there were no signs of peace.

¹ See map, p. 173.

One day in April, when the early trees of Washington were putting forth new leaves, a dispatch came to the White House. It was from General Grant. This is what the commander of the Union armies said:

1865
General Lee's
surrender (April 9)

"General Lee surrendered the Army of Northern Virginia this afternoon on terms proposed by myself."

The country was saved! Lincoln now knew that all he had dared hope to do had been done.

The national joy
over peace

He called his cabinet together that they too might rejoice. The news spread through the corridors of the capitol and out into the streets. Telegraph wires proclaimed Grant's message to thousands upon thousands of anxious homes. And, as fast as the words could travel, church bells rang and cannon boomed until the sound had reached the Pacific coast.

The Confederate
armies disband

The Confederates were allowed to disband and to keep their horses for the plows. It was said the Union armies would soon be marching into Washington to pass in review before mustering out of service.

President Lincoln and his cabinet debated about the restoration of the seceded states.

"We must extinguish our resentments," said Lincoln, "if we expect to live in harmony and peace."

People of the South were already beginning to see that Lincoln, the emancipator, would after all prove to be their best friend.

On the afternoon of the fifth day after the message of peace had come, the president was driving with his wife. "When these four years are over, Mary," he said, "we will go back to Illinois. I will again be a country lawyer. God has been very good to us."

That night he was shot by a half-crazed actor. A few hours later, "with malice toward none, with charity for all," he breathed his last.

1865
Assassination of
President Lincoln
(April 15)

And while Union armies in Virginia—a hundred and fifty thousand strong—were preparing to pass in triumphant review before their commander-in-chief, his body lay in state on its way to Oakridge Cemetery, near Springfield, Illinois.

Of the army that passed, few wore regimentals. Most of those in the sad procession were the fathers, mothers, sisters, or brothers of the men in blue. Scarce one of them all but had grieved for some hero during the war. And their tears flowed afresh at this new, added grief.

The procession for
burial at Oakridge
near Springfield

SAMUEL FINLEY BREESE MORSE

INVENTOR OF THE TELEGRAPH

1791-1872

1791
Birth of Samuel
Morse



SAMUEL MORSE was born at Charlestown, Massachusetts. The town was in full view of Boston Bay. When the wind was fresh the ships in the harbor spread broad canvas wings, and the water grew white with sails. But no steam whistles blew and no funnels puffed out smoke.

On the land side no engines with roars and cinders rushed into the Puritan town.

Heavy carts rattled over the cobble stones of the narrow streets, with now and then a fine coach for the "gentles", though most people in Charlestown, as everywhere else, trudged along on foot with a courage as stout as their thick cow-hide boots.

That was in the year 1791, when George Washington was president of the new United States.

People were just beginning to find out how very far they must walk to reach the west edge of the "back pasture."

"Back pasture" was the name the coast cities had given to the lands north of the Ohio. The real name of the region was the Northwest Territory. The Northwest Territory had hardly been organized before thousands of emigrants crossed the Alleghanies and set flatboats upon the Ohio River.



SAMUEL F. B. MORSE
1779 - 1872

1789-1797
George Washington
president of the
United States

The Northwest
Territory

Marietta at the mouth of the Muskingum was founded, and also Losantiville, afterward called Cincinnati. Soon small towns perched here and there for miles along both banks of the river.

1788
Marietta founded
Cincinnati

When the Northwest Territory began to form states, Louisiana, the new territory purchased from France, was called the "back pasture". Some ambitious people said if there were only a cheap and quick way to travel, settlements could be made even west of the Mississippi; yet the land seemed very far off.

Louisiana

Just about that time Robert Fulton invented a steamboat. Samuel Morse of Charlestown, then sixteen years old, read in a Boston paper all about the launching of the *Clermont* on the Hudson River.

1807
Robert Fulton
launches the
Clermont

It was a boat one hundred and thirty feet long and eighteen feet wide with mast and sail, and on each side there was a great wheel.

The inventor had named the boat the *Clermont*; but most of the crowd lined up on shore to see it launched had called it "Fulton's Folly".



ROBERT FULTON
1765-1815

The *Clermont* had steamed up the Hudson with the paddles throwing spray. Some sailors who met it in mid-stream had cried out in fright at the sparks of fire and the dense black smoke from the funnel.



THE CLERMONT

In just thirty-two hours the steamboat had made the trip from New York to the sleepy old Dutch town of Albany.

Samuel Morse watched every day for more news of

the *Clermont*. He had been to Yale College and had made some experiments with steam; but this boat was far beyond anything he had dreamed could be done.

Four years later Morse heard that Robert Fulton had launched a steamboat on the Ohio River. "That settles it," said the young student. "New Orleans is going to be the greatest city in the United States. The whole west will send its products down the Mississippi by steam."

Morse was always interested in the inventions registered in the patent office at Washington. One of the patents was for the cotton gin, invented by Eli Whitney, which had

been in use long enough to show what a blessing it would be to the cotton states. One cotton gin could do the work of a thousand slaves. Another invention was a grain cutter by which one man could cut five acres of wheat in a day; another was a thrashing machine which beat out as much wheat as forty men with flails.

He said he wished he might invent something which would help develop the resources of the country.

There were swift streams for water power, and coal beds to feed furnaces, and there were cotton and wood and hemp and iron. But few people in the United States cared to take the trouble to manufacture anything, because England and France brought what was needed and raw materials were welcomed in exchange.

Perhaps, with his odd experiments, Samuel Morse

1811
A steamboat on the
Ohio River



COTTON GIN

The patent office

The cotton gin

A grain cutter

A thrashing machine

The great natural
resources of America



ELI WHITNEY
1765-1825

might have invented some machinery for something or other if there had been any demand for home manufactures. However that may be, he decided to become a painter, and went to London to study. There were several American artists in London. Morse did serious work. One of his pictures was exhibited in the Royal Academy, and a plaster statue which he modeled won a gold medal.

Samuel Morse goes
to London

The London Royal
Academy

His best friend proved to be Benjamin West, who, although he was an American, was president of the Royal Academy. King George III came sometimes to look at West's pictures. His majesty was very old. Some said he was crazy. Samuel Morse thought that nearly all Englishmen must be crazy from the way they misunderstood America.

Benjamin West

King George III

He had hardly landed before he heard talk of war with America. There was much boasting in London about what would happen if war did break out with the United States. Lord Brougham, who was called a great statesman, expected that the American republic would be annexed to Canada. His lordship ridiculed "Yankees" whose "armies were still at the plow, and whose assembled navies could not lay siege to a single English sloop of war."

Lord Brougham

When the war of 1812 began,¹ Morse trembled for what might happen. The British navy was so great, the American ships were so few. Just fancy how he felt when he read this in an English paper: "Five hundred British vessels and three frigates have been captured in seven months by the Americans. Down to this moment not an American frigate has struck her

1812-1815
The War of 1812

¹ See p. 200.

flag. They traverse the Atlantic; they visit the West India Islands; they parade along the coast of South America. Nothing chases; nothing engages them but yields to them a triumph."

All that was pleasant reading for the young artist. And when he saw men rushing along the streets of London with the extras in their hands, crying out that the great British army had been defeated at New Orleans, he wished he might talk face to face with Lord Brougham about the "Yankee armies still at the plow."

1815
The battle of New
Orleans (January 8)

Morse returned home just after the war was over; but immigration from Europe had already set in toward the west.

Immigration from
Europe

"This be a main queer country," said a man from Yorkshire whose little ones tugged at the skirts of his coat. "This be a main queer country; for I have asked the laboring folks along the road how many meals they eat in a day, and they all say three and sometimes four if they want them. Back in England we have but two and they are scant enough. And only think, sir, many of these people asked me to eat and drink with them. We couldn't do so in Yorkshire, sir; for we had not enough for ourselves."

Thousands of immigrants unloaded their baggage in the port of Boston to pack it again on mules or in ox-carts and carry it over a road cut through the forest to Pittsburg. At Pittsburg steamboats were waiting, and in a very short time the settlers were at work in their cabins and fields.

When Morse went to New York to live, he saw the same vast stream of immigrants landing there from Europe.

1823
Morse goes to New York to open a studio

The artist opened a studio for portrait painting and became acquainted with many distinguished men. Among those whose portraits he painted was the Marquis de Lafayette, then on a visit to America. The great Frenchman could talk of but little else than the growth of the colonies since he had helped to set them free.

1824-1825
The Marquis de Lafayette visits America

He said he had steamed up the Mississippi and then up the Ohio. Everywhere on the banks of the rivers were farm lands, and neat towns with steeples and tall roofs, and broad streets that led down to the wharves. He said New Orleans would probably be the greatest city in the United States, because trade would naturally follow a river.

Development of the west

But that very year Morse saw Governor Clinton pour a keg of fresh water into the brine of New York Bay. That was a greeting from Lake Erie to the ocean. The Erie Canal joined the lake at Buffalo to the Hudson at Albany. Ten days of time and half the cost of transportation were saved by the Erie Canal. And so a busy trade began between the western states and New York City.

1825
The Erie Canal completed

A national turnpike was built through the mountains from Maryland. Three wagons might be drawn abreast along the smooth road, with its bridges arching the rivers. Stage lines carried passengers and mail over the national pike into the states north of the Ohio. Then a railroad was built from Baltimore toward the

The national pike road

1830
The first American railway built at Baltimore

1829
Samuel Morse again
goes to Europe



WASHINGTON
IRVING
1783-1850

American books
The Edinburgh
Review

west. And this brought so much trade that New York, Boston, and Philadelphia planned for western railroads too.

When Samuel Morse went abroad again he tried to be modest about the progress the United States was making in transportation, manufacturing, and labor-saving machines; but his old friends said he boasted quite too much.

There was one thing he dared not mention in England. That was an American book. He knew how American writers were held up to scorn. The *EDINBURGH REVIEW*, a Scottish magazine, said: "But why *should* Americans write books? Prairies, steamboats, and grist mills are their national objects for centuries to come."

One evening Morse found himself in the sitting-room of a hotel with Coleridge, the great English poet. He took from his bag a book written by one of his New York friends.

"What book have you, sir?" asked the poet.

"Oh, it is only an American book," replied Morse.

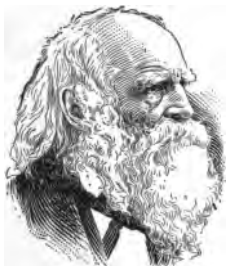
"Let me see it, please." And taking the book, Coleridge began to read.

Morse retired for the night. At ten o'clock the next morning he found the poet bending over the book—the candles lighted and the shutters closed.

"'Tis an admirable book!" cried Coleridge, who was amazed that he had read all night.

The book was "Knickerbocker's History of New York," by Washington Irving.

From that time on, Morse had no need to be ashamed



WILLIAM CULLEN
BRYANT
1794-1878

Samuel Taylor
Coleridge

of his countrymen in the matter of books. William Cullen Bryant, John Greenleaf Whittier, Edgar Allan Poe, James Fenimore Cooper, Washington Irving, and Nathaniel Hawthorne were soon much read and admired by their cousins across the sea.

It was not long before the statesmen of England agreed that no better orators spoke in Parliament than Daniel Webster, Henry Clay, and John C. Calhoun, who spoke in the American Congress; and no better jurists argued in the British courts than John Marshall, Joseph Story and James Kent, who argued in American courts.

On one of his voyages Morse heard a gentleman describing an experiment in electricity which he had seen in Paris. The electric spark had passed through a wire which was over a hundred feet long.

"How soon, do you think, the current could pass through the wire?" asked the gentleman.

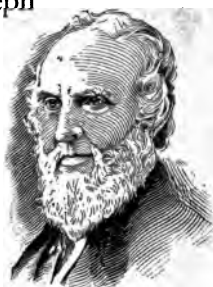
Morse remembered the experiments of Benjamin Franklin, who had sent a kite into the clouds during a storm.

"I think the current would pass instantly," he replied.

After the conversation he kept thinking about the experiment. "Why," he asked himself, "cannot symbols of some kind express the alphabet and be transmitted by the electric fluid through a wire—not hundreds of feet only, but miles and miles—yes, around the whole globe?"

The more he thought of the idea the more convinced he was that it could be carried out.

1777-1852
Henry Clay
1782-1852
Daniel Webster
1782-1850
John C. Calhoun
1779-1845
Joseph Story
1763-1847
James Kent



JOHN GREENLEAF
WHITTIER
1807-1878

The experiments of
Benjamin Franklin
in electricity



EDGAR ALLAN POE
1809-1849

Morse sketches an instrument for transmitting thought

He sketched on paper an instrument for transmitting thought. He worked for years. Sometimes he was obliged to paint pictures to make money for bread. Sometimes crackers and tea were his only food for days together.



NATHANIEL
HAWTHORNE
1804 - 1864

1843
Congress makes an appropriation for a trial of the telegraph (March 3)

At last, with instrument ready and a code for the alphabet learned, he went to Washington. Steam cars then ran between New York and the capital. He asked himself as he sped along whether he should dare hope that a wire would one day be laid along the track.

After weeks of earnest effort, and the powerful support of a few faithful friends, he succeeded in getting a bill passed by the House of Representatives appropriating thirty thousand dollars "for a trial of the telegraph"; but the Senate must also pass the bill before it would be of any account. Some of the senators said Samuel Finley Breese Morse was as "breezy" as his name, and the idea of a telegraph was pure folly. But others, more thoughtful, remembered how the Erie Canal had been called "Clinton's Ditch", and it was bringing hundreds of thousands of dollars every year to New York state; and how the *Clermont* had been called "Fulton's Folly", yet steamboats were crossing the ocean.



JAMES FENIMORE
COOPER
1789 - 1851

1844
The first telegraph line exhibited (May 24)

In the end the Senate, by a very small majority, voted the appropriation. The very next year a telegraph line was stretched from Baltimore to Washington.

"What hath God wrought!" was the first formal

message over the wire. And soon the world knew that another wonderful American invention had been made. John Quincy Adams, who had once been president of the United States, said he would "rather be a Fulton or a Morse than a hundred presidents."

Morse applied for patents in most of the countries of Europe. Ambassadors began to whisper court secrets in cipher; journalists, writing at sunset in a far-away land, knew that by sunrise their words could be read at home; the dying gathered his scattered family about his bed in time to bestow his blessing—every occupation in life seemed to be affected by the wonderful click of the telegraph needle.

One moonlight night in October, Morse laid in New York harbor the first submarine telegraph. In a few years electric currents were passing through wire under the English Channel, the North Sea, the Black Sea, and the Mediterranean. From the vine-clad hills of Italy to the snow fields of Russia ran the swift messenger given to the use of the world by Samuel Morse, the American.

Medals and banquets and public addresses became a common detail in the life of the great inventor. Finally delegates from France, Russia, Sweden, Austria and other countries of Europe met in Paris and voted the sum of eighty thousand dollars for a gift to the man who had shown them the use of the telegraph.

When Cyrus W. Field began his great work of threading the ocean with the wire in order that the New World might talk with the Old, you can fancy how interested Morse was in the plan.

Patents in Europe



CYRUS W. FIELD
1819-1892

1858

The gift of Europe
to the inventor of the
telegraph

1858
The first cable message

Two ships started from opposite shores, along a track which had been found the best. Each ship bore coils of cable. The ships met in mid-ocean. The cables were spliced and the ends borne back to shore. After several unsuccessful efforts, communication was finally established and presently a message of peace and good will was flashed across the sea from Queen Victoria to President Buchanan.

Railroads



JAMES BUCHANAN
1791-1866

1865
The Union Pacific
breaks ground at
Omaha

Meantime railroads had been spanning the Union from state to state. And along each shining track poles were set up for the telegraph wires.

Some congressmen said it was folly to try to cross the deserts and mountains in the west; others said a railroad would make the deserts bloom like a rose and banish the terrors of the ice-capped peaks.

After a great deal of talking an appropriation was made to assist in building a railroad to the Pacific coast. The first ground for the Union Pacific was broken at Omaha, Nebraska, then a small town built mostly of tents.

Over arid wastes of sage brush and sand the work went smoothly enough. Then mountains were blasted and gorges were spanned. Hostile Indians whooped and brandished their knives; but the work of laying the track went on, and along the track rose telegraph poles.

1869
The Union Pacific
completed
(May 10)

The last tie of the Union Pacific was laid at Promontory Point north of the shores of Great Salt Lake; the last rail joined a rail of the Central Pacific, from the west.

The telegraph wire clicked the news to New York.

It must have been a happy hour for Samuel Morse. The wire clicked out all the news of the celebration; how Governor Leland Stanford had come in his car from San Francisco; how the governor had driven the spikes—two of silver and two of gold—from Montana, Idaho, California, and Nevada.

“Done!” clicked the wire at 2:47 P. M. by Washington time, which was about 12:45 on the shores of Great Salt Lake.

Two engines—

Facing on a single track

Half the world behind each

back—

moved slowly toward each other. They touched noses, Eskimo fashion, in salute.

Cheers clicked over the wires—east to the cities along the Atlantic, west to the cities on the Pacific coast—cheers for everybody from the highest to the lowest who had had anything to do with the road. Perhaps the heartiest cheers of all were for Ulysses S. Grant, the new president of the United States, and Samuel F. B. Morse, the old electrician who had abridged time and space with a little iron thread.



A RAILWAY SCENE

1869
Ulysses S. Grant
inaugurated
eighteenth president
of the United States
(March 4)

WILLIAM MCKINLEY
THE TWENTY-FIFTH PRESIDENT OF THE UNITED STATES

1843-1901

1843
The birth of
William
McKinley
(January 20)



PERHAPS every mother whose son is born in the United States has the right to hope that some day her son may be president. But if Mrs. McKinley had such a hope in her heart as she bent over William's cradle, she could think of his being president only as far west as the Rocky Mountains.

When William McKinley was born, the United States was bounded on the west by Texas, which was owned by the Spaniards; the high ridge of the Rocky Mountains, and a stretch of the Pacific Ocean along the coast of Oregon.¹

Some people said the nation was even then too large for one president to rule.

When William was two years old Texas was annexed to the Union. And then Mexico ceded such a vast tract of land that the whole west line of the United States bordered on the ocean.²



WILLIAM MCKINLEY
1843-1901

William went to Allegheny College. He became a leader in a debating society. Whenever the question was about the government he defended the expansion of our territory. He said the American flag was broad

¹ See map, p. 190.

² See map, p. 210.

1845
The annexation of
Texas
1848
Mexico cedes land
to the United States
1860
William McKinley
in college

enough to cover all lands and all peoples that sought protection beneath its folds.

In the very midst of this school-boy debating, seven states in the south seceded from the Union¹ and set up a government of their own. It looked as if the boasted flag were soon to be torn quite in two.

1861
The Confederate
government organized
(February 18)

When President Lincoln issued a call for troops to defend the Union, William McKinley, with thousands of other young men still in their teens, hurried to enlist in the Union army.

President Lincoln
calls for troops
(April 15)

McKinley was a private at first, then sergeant, then lieutenant, then captain. And then for service in the reserve corps at Washington he was brevetted major by the president.

1861
McKinley enlists
in the army (June)

Though the major was only twenty-one years old, he had already shown the strong, manly character which was to make him a leader of men.

He rejoiced with the throng on the streets of Washington when news of peace came, and he mourned with the rest when President Lincoln was shot by an assassin.

1865
The surrender of
General Robert E. Lee
(April 9)
The death by
assassination of
President Lincoln
(April 15)

Little did anyone who saw the erect, stalwart young fellow in blue regimentals dream that he too would some day be president, and would also fall by an assassin's hand.

After the army of volunteers was mustered out of service, McKinley studied law. He began practice in Canton, Ohio. His friends predicted that he would one day be judge.

McKinley begins the
practice of law

When the Republicans nominated Ulysses S. Grant for president, McKinley took part in the public speaking.

Ulysses S. Grant

¹ See p. 219.

There was a vast deal of talk about how the seceded states should again take their place in the Union, and what should be done with the millions of black freedmen; and whether the "Monroe Doctrine"¹ meant this or meant that.

The "Monroe Doctrine"

1864
Napoleon III sends an army to Mexico



PHILIP H. SHERIDAN
1831-1888

1867
Death of Maximilian (June 19)

People were talking about the "Monroe Doctrine" because Mexico had been invaded by foreign troops.

While the United States was busily occupied with the terrible war within her own borders, Napoleon III of France sent an army into Mexico, overthrew the republic and seated on a throne an Austrian prince with the title of Maximilian I.

More than one monarch in Europe watched then to see what would become of the "Monroe Doctrine", which forbade foreign occupation of American soil.

The United States government quoted the doctrine in no gentle voice, and sent General Phil Sheridan to the Rio Grande with an army. Napoleon withdrew the French troops. Maximilian refused to leave Mexico and was shot by the Mexicans, who again proclaimed a republic.

Some of the campaign orators said the United States should not meddle with Mexican affairs; but William McKinley defended the action of the government. He said his motto was "America for Americans".

He defended the purchase of Alaska, which some people called "Seward's Folly" because William H. Seward had



WILLIAM H. SEWARD
1801-1872

¹ See p. 203.

negotiated the purchase with Russia. Alaska was a great territory in the northwest corner of North America with only a bit of ocean called Bering Strait between it and Asia.¹ Most people thought Alaska was made up of little else than icebergs and snow fields. Seven million two hundred thousand dollars seemed a large sum to pay for just snow and ice.

1867
The purchase of
Alaska from Russia
(October)

William McKinley said Alaska was American soil and should be owned by Canada, Mexico, or the United States. He said the United States had the best government in the world, and should extend its blessings wherever it justly could.

At last the speechmaking ended, and Ulysses S. Grant was elected president.

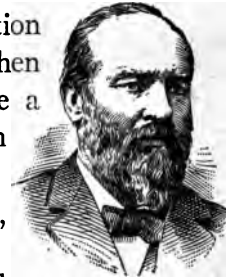
1869
Ulysses S. Grant
inaugurated (March 4)

The whole country was soon divided on the question of giving the negro the right to vote at the polls. When McKinley said he was in favor of negro suffrage a friend urged him to avoid speaking about it in public.

"You will ruin your chances for Congress, William," said the friend.

"Be that as it may," said McKinley, "I shall speak out my views whenever I can."

The fifteenth amendment to the constitution, securing to the negro the right of suffrage, was ratified by the states and became a law. A few years later the fearless young Republican was elected to Congress. He was still in Congress when James A. Garfield was shot by a disappointed office-seeker. And again William McKinley mourned a martyred president, with no thought of a like fate for himself.



JAMES A. GARFIELD
1831-1881

1870
The fifteenth
amendment ratified
(March 30)

1876
McKinley elected to
Congress

1881
Assassination of
President Garfield
(July 2)

¹ See map of territorial growth, between pp. 186-187.

The McKinley
Tariff Bill

1892

McKinley inaugurated
governor of Ohio

(January 4)

1896

McKinley nominated
for president by the
Republicans

William J. Bryan
nominated by the
Democrats



Territorial extent

1897

Discovery of gold
in the Klondike

McKinley introduced in Congress a bill for a high tariff which caused a great deal of discussion.

He was elected governor of Ohio and served his state so well that he was re-elected for a second term. Then he practiced law until he was nominated by the Republican national convention for president of the United States.

William J. Bryan, of Nebraska, was nominated by the Democratic party, and minor parties also had candidates in the field.

After one of the most exciting campaigns in our history the Republican candidate was elected.

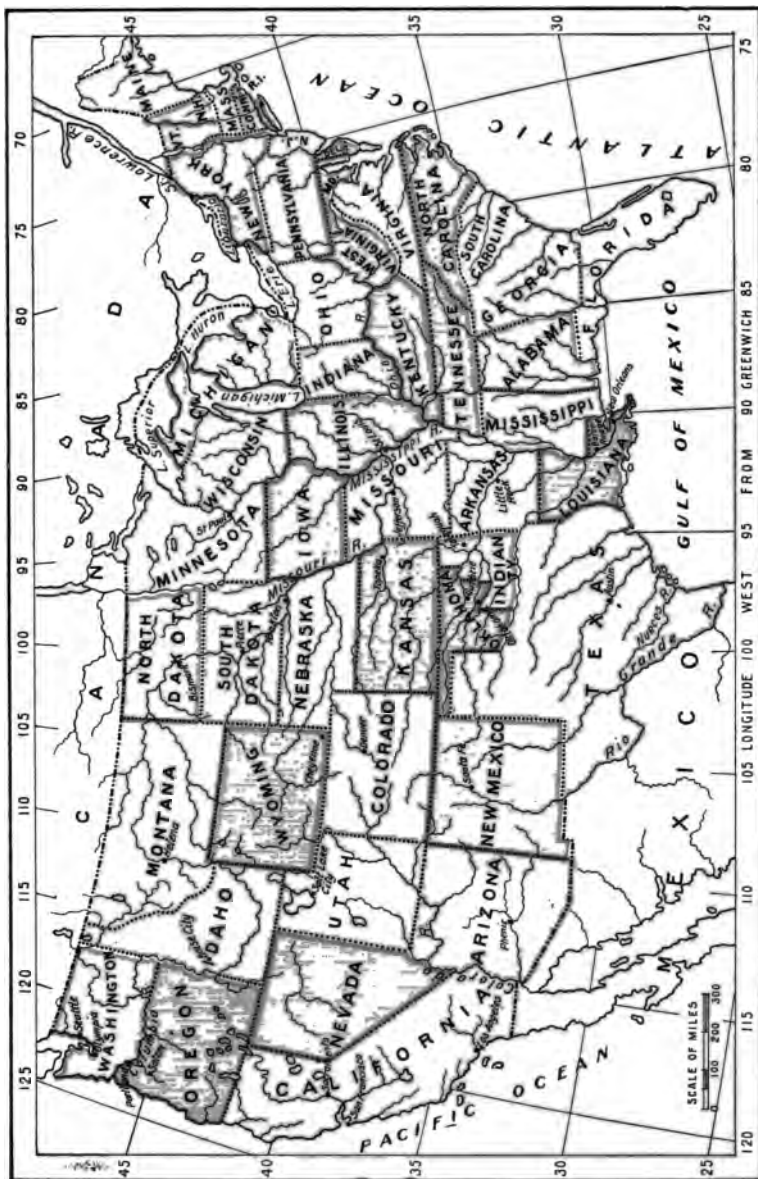
At the inauguration of William McKinley, his mother, then very old, was an honored guest. The place to which her son had been called was higher than she could ever have dreamed of as he lay in his cradle.

The United States extended from sea to sea.

There were forty-five states and six territories, all at peace with one another and with the world.

Before the summer was over reports were spread of discoveries of gold along the Klondike River, in British territory, near the boundary line of Alaska. The same mad rush for gold began that had once so quickly settled California. Thousands jostled each other to obtain ship passage for Alaska. Every available vessel was pressed into service at Seattle and other ports along the Pacific coast. Many thousands also tramped overland with sledges and dogs.

When new gold fields were discovered in Alaska, President McKinley established a military post on the



UNITED STATES IN 1905



upper Yukon. Towns sprang up like magic; railroads were built; telegraph wires were laid. Presently "Seward's Folly" was asking to be represented in Congress.

Meantime President McKinley was facing a war with Spain.

Spanish oppression in Cuba had become unbearable. The Cubans had taken up arms against the govern-

Spanish oppression
in Cuba



ment, and the Spanish governor of the island was trying to starve them into submission to the unjust laws imposed by the Spanish Cortes.¹

The governor drove the country people into the cities and towns; he burned their sugar and tobacco houses and destroyed their tools and machinery; so that they might have neither money nor food with which to prolong their war.

Thousands of Cubans were starving to death. Americans who were in business in Cuba suffered with the rest.

The king of Spain was Alfonso XIII. He was only a boy; and his mother, Maria Christina, ruled as queen regent.



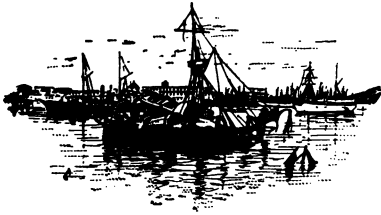
KING ALFONSO
1886-

Alfonso XIII, king
of Spain

¹ The Cortes is the parliament which assembles at Madrid.

President McKinley thought it was possible that the real facts about the bad government in Cuba had not been reported to the queen. He accordingly sent a protest to Spain and pledged his support in any effort toward an honorable peace.

1898
The destruction of
the *Maine*
(February 15)



THE WRECK OF THE MAINE

Before a change had come in the inhuman treatment of the Cubans, the United States battleship *Maine* was blown up in Havana harbor, and two hundred and sixty-six American sailors were killed. Many Americans believed that the ship had been destroyed by Spanish officials. The whole nation cried out anew against the terrible condition of Cuba. But even then war might have been averted if Spain had ceased

the barbarous methods employed in her effort to bring the island to terms.

Congress votes an
appropriation for
national defense
(March 7)

Anticipating war between the United States and Spain, Congress voted fifty million dollars for national defense. There was not a single vote in either the Senate or the House against this vast appropriation.

President McKinley finally said in a message to Congress that the war in Cuba was a menace to this country, and asked authority to use such measures as might be necessary to bring it to a close.

Congress declares
war with Spain

Then Congress resolved that a state of war had existed since April 21.

The president called on the states for volunteers; and booths were set up in cities and towns where men were mustered into service.

One booth in New York City was in Union Square—

just beneath the bronze equestrian statue of Washington, whose out-stretched hand seemed to urge men on to their mission of mercy and peace.

Volunteers rallied from the north and the south, from the east and the west, with the same earnest zeal and marched toward the Atlantic coast. Admiral Sampson and Commodore Schley hurried south to blockade Cuban ports.

Preparation for war

Admiral Sampson
Commodore Schley



WASHINGTON MONUMENT
UNION SQUARE, N. Y.

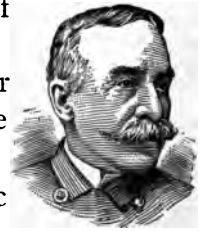
Spain hoped that some one of the great powers of Europe who held trade relations with the island would intervene to break the blockade.

England's interests in the island were greater than those of any other foreign nation. But England refused to take any part in the war. The dignified attitude of President McKinley had challenged the respect of all the great powers.

While our whole nation was anxiously waiting for news from the Cuban coast, astounding news came from Hong Kong¹ by cable across the Atlantic.

Commodore Dewey, in command of the Asiatic squadron, had sailed to Luzon,² one of the Philippine Islands, and had entered Manila Bay. He had sunk ten Spanish ships without the loss of an American sailor, and held the city of Manila at his mercy.

A few weeks later, the fleet of the Spanish admiral, Cervera, in an attempt to escape from the harbor of Santiago,³ on the southeast coast of Cuba, was pursued



GEORGE DEWEY
1837-

1898
Commodore Dewey's
victory in Manila
Bay (May 1)
The naval battle
off Santiago
(July 3)

¹ There was no cable, as yet, across the Pacific Ocean.

² See map, p. 245. ³ See map, p. 241.

by the combined fleets of Sampson and Schley. Four Spanish cruisers and two torpedo boats were destroyed or beached with the loss of only one American sailor.

Santiago occupied
by American troops
(July 17)



W. T. SAMPSON
1840-1902

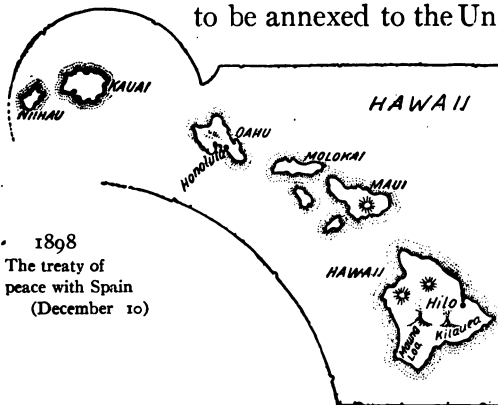
Porto Rico
formally
surrenders to the
United States
(August 17)

Then the city of Santiago and the Spanish army of about twenty-five thousand men surrendered to General Shafter.

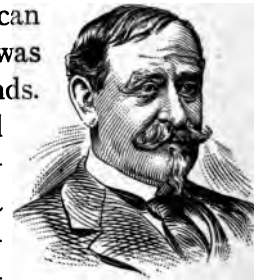
A few days later General Miles landed on the south coast of Porto Rico.¹ He was marching north toward San Juan, the capital of the island, when telegraph wires ticked under the ocean the story of peace. The Stars and Stripes soon waved over San Juan without the loss of a life.

Meantime the little republic of Hawaii, southwest of California, had been permitting American warships to coal at Honolulu. There was danger that Spain might attack the islands. When the Hawaiian government asked to be annexed to the United States, Con-

Hawaii annexed
(August 12)



1898
The treaty of
peace with Spain
(December 10)



WINFIELD S. SCHLEY
1839-

gress passed a joint resolution for the annexation. And so the territory of the Union was increased by a fine group of islands, with some of the best harbors in the world.

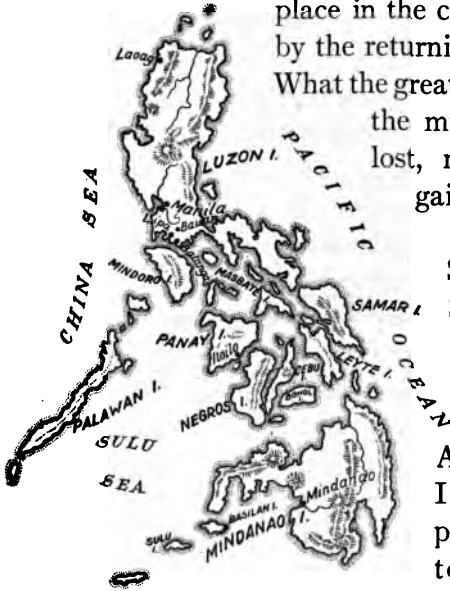
The final treaty of peace

¹ See map, p. 246.

with Spain was signed at Paris. By this treaty Spain surrendered all claim to Cuba, ceded Porto Rico¹ in the West Indies, and the island of Guam,² one of the Ladrone Islands, to the United States. Spain also ceded the Philippine Archipelago,² containing over a thousand islands, to the United States, surrendering all claims for the sum of twenty million dollars.

Then came the last act of Spain on the splendid island she had lost. The remains of Christopher Columbus were solemnly removed from their resting

place in the cathedral at Havana by the returning Spanish troops. What the great admiral had found the misrule of Spain had lost, never to be regained.



As for the United States, the war with Spain had shown to the world the strong, earnest qualities in American manhood. It had bound all parts of the Union together in good feeling and high

After the war

aspiration. And so in helping others the people of the United States reached a more cordial understanding at home, and won the increased respect of the nations abroad.

¹ See map, p. 246. ² See map of territorial expansion, bet. pp. 248-249.

President McKinley was not deceived by the treaty of peace into thinking that his task was done. There remained a still greater work to do for the aliens who had found protection under our flag.

Cuba was to be encouraged in her effort to become an independent republic; and Porto Rico and the Philippines were to be given self-government as free as any state in the Union when they had proved their worth.

In the far away Philippines it seemed difficult for

prisings in the
hilippines



the natives to realize that the iron heel which had been lifted had not been raised only that another might crush. There were uprisings all over the islands. But so firm was President McKinley's faith in the final peace that he was not in the least dismayed. "Rebellion," he said, "may delay but it cannot destroy the American flag's mission of liberty and humanity."

Just about this time there was another mission upon which the president sent the American flag. Several regiments carried it across the Pacific Ocean to China, to protect American citizens whose lives were endangered by the "Boxers".

The Boxers were a Chinese secret society which hated foreigners and had pledged to put

1900
War with China



NELSON A. MILES
1839 -

to death those who were living within the empire—Germans, Russians, Italians, Frenchmen, Englishmen, Americans. There were a great many foreign merchants living in China to carry on trade, and there were many missionaries who labored to convert the heathen Chinamen to the Christian religion.

The Boxers hated the missionaries because they feared they would overthrow the national religion, and they hated the merchants because they were introducing the railroad, the telegraph, the steamboat and other modern inventions which seemed to take labor away from the natives. They could not understand the wonderful value of modern methods for carrying on trade.

The Boxers began to destroy the railroads and cut down the telegraph poles. They massacred some natives who had professed Christianity; then they killed some white missionaries and burned their churches. Troops from the Chinese imperial army joined the Boxers until thousands of yellow madmen were marching from city to city to put foreign residents to death.

And so England, Germany, France, Russia, Italy, and the United States joined together to defend their countrymen. The united armies captured Peking and Tientsin and held them until China sued for peace, and made pledges to protect the citizens of other countries who lived within the empire.

President McKinley had served the people of the United States so well during almost four very eventful years that he was re-elected president, with Theodore Roosevelt, of New York, vice-president.

1900
President McKinley
re-elected

1790
The First Census in
the United States

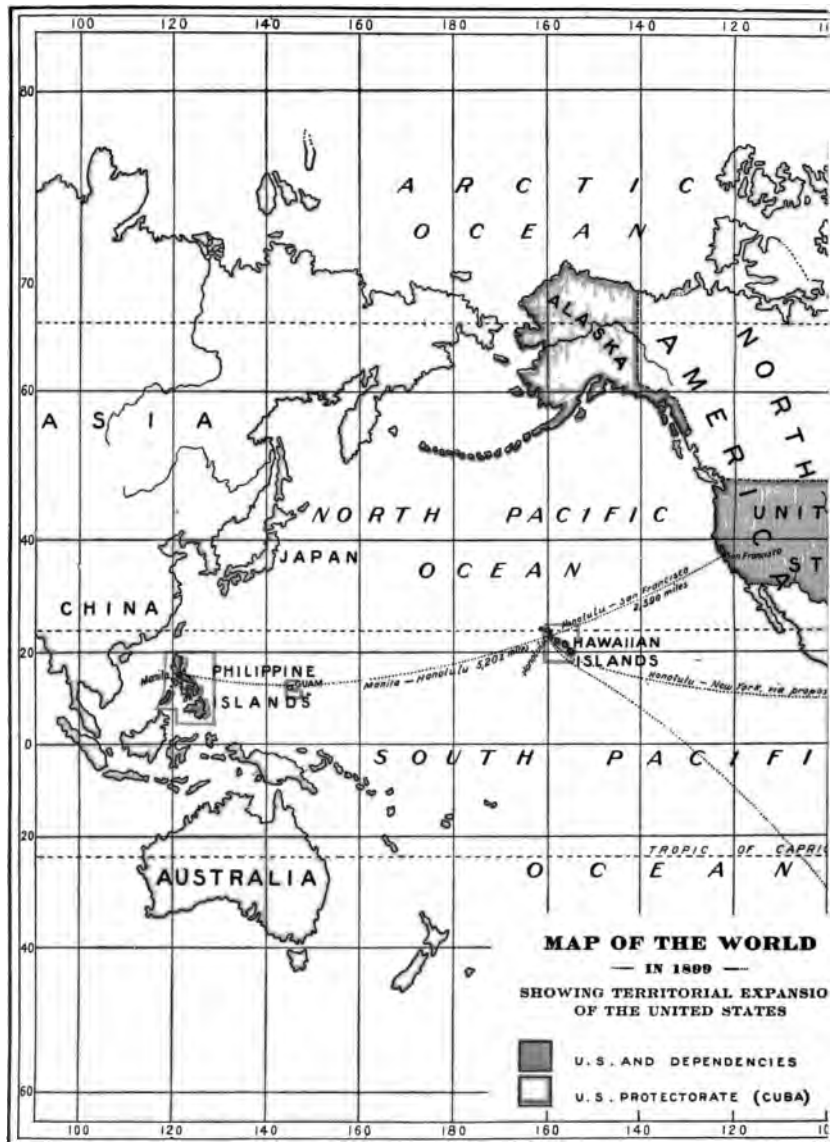
The new term began the year after the twelfth census was taken. The census of a country determines its population, wealth, and general condition. In the United States the census is registered every ten years. The first census was taken when George Washington was president. It showed a population of less than four million, and almost no manufactures. The twelfth census, during the administration of William McKinley, showed a population of over seventy-six million. The value of manufactured articles was nearly double that of agricultural products, yet the value of farm lands had increased over all former years.

President McKinley resolved to visit the different sections of the country to see for himself the marvelous progress which was being made. Wherever the president went he was received with such hearty hospitality that someone said another "era of good feeling" was at hand.

When he reached the Pacific coast he knew well that the possible limits of his journey had not been reached. Across a stretch of sea lay Hawaii, and farther on the Philippines with the millions of dusky, half-savage islanders. The president had vast plans for schools and churches and factories and waving fields of grain, which would soften savage nature. The thought of these islands could not fail to remind him that beyond them lie China, which Marco Polo had once revealed to Europe; and Japan, farther north, once so wrapt in isolation from all the world. Also that railroads, telegraph lines and modern ideas of every kind were awakening the Old World to a

new and vigorous life, and opening up untold possibilities in the line of commerce.

When President McKinley, on his return to the East, visited the Pan-American Exposition at Buffalo his mind was teeming with the emotions aroused by his tour through the Union. On President's Day, in an eloquent address, he reviewed the past in our national growth. Among other things for the future he urged that an isthmian canal should be built to unite the two oceans that commerce might more freely pass to and fro between all the nations of the earth.

The Pan-American
Exposition

At an afternoon reception in the Temple of Music in Buffalo President McKinley was shot by a Polish anarchist. A few days later he died. Theodore Roosevelt, the vice-president, at once became president, and pledged himself to carry out the wise plans of the great man whose name statesmen had already begun to place beside those of Lincoln and Washington.

1901
The assassination of
President McKinley
(September 6)

Rarely has our nation showed such honor and respect to a dead president as was shown to William McKinley. His public and his private life had been so free from reproach that when the funeral services were held at Canton, Ohio, all business was suspended throughout the United States; and at that hour, in the Spanish Islands which had been freed from oppression by his helping hand, bells were tolled and dusky faces turned in solemn silence toward the Stars and Stripes that hung at half mast above the public buildings of the towns.

The most important measures that had interested President McKinley were the independence of Cuba; the self-government of Porto Rico and the Philip-

piners; and the building of an isthmian canal to join the Atlantic Ocean to the Pacific.



1902
Estrada Palma
inaugurated president
of Cuba (May 20)

President Roosevelt encouraged the Cubans to establish a republic. After Estrada Palma had been elected the first president of Cuba by the votes of the Cuban people, President Roosevelt recalled our troops that had kept peace in the island since the war with Spain, and he ordered that the protecting flag of the United States should be taken from all the public buildings that the Cuban flag might wave over a land as free as our own.

He continued the work of self-government which President McKinley had begun in Porto Rico and the

Panama Canal
route



Philippines appointing native citizens to offices of trust wherever it seemed wise to do so.

Meantime, Cuba, Porto Rico, the Hawaiian Islands, the Philippines—yes, and even little Guam¹ in the group Magellan had called the Ladrones because an Indian there had stolen one of his rowboats—were eagerly watching what the United States was going to do about a canal between the two oceans.

¹See map of territorial expansion, between pp. 248-249.

If you study the map' you will see how these different groups of islands lie in the track of ships from Europe and the east coast of the United States to Asia by way of an isthmian canal.

President Roosevelt and John Hay, Secretary of State, concluded a treaty with the Republic of Panama. By this treaty the United States was authorized to build a ship canal across the Isthmus of Panama. A great army was to be called together again to invade foreign soil—an army of peace, with shovels and spades, to dig the short way to China and the Spice Islands which Christopher Columbus had so wearily sought more than four hundred years before.

Vice-President Roosevelt, after the death of President McKinley, had been quietly sworn into the office of president at Buffalo, New York. He fulfilled the pledges of the dead president so well that at the next election he was chosen by the people themselves. When he was publicly inaugurated on the balcony of the capitol at Washington, he again repeated the words "I do solemnly swear that I will faithfully execute the office of President of the United States, and will, to the best of my ability, preserve, protect and defend the Constitution."

No president in the history of the United States has ever proved false to this pledge which is required by the constitution and which was first uttered by George Washington when thirteen impoverished little states formed a permanent Union.

1904
Treaty for the Panama
Canal



THEODORE ROOSEVELT
1858-

¹See map of territorial expansion, between pp. 248-249.

**THE ADMISSION OF STATES AND TERRITORIES INTO THE
UNION, AND THEIR RATIO OF REPRESENTATION
BASED ON THE CENSUS OF 1900**

	States	Ratified the Constitution	1900 Repre- sentative- tives	1908 Elec. Votes
1	Delaware.....	Dec. 7, 1787	1	3
2	Pennsylvania.....	Dec. 12, 1787	32	34
3	New Jersey.....	Dec. 18, 1787	10	12
4	Georgia.....	Jan. 2, 1788	11	18
5	Connecticut.....	Jan. 9, 1788	5	7
6	Massachusetts.....	Feb. 6, 1788	14	16
7	Maryland.....	April 28, 1788	6	8
8	South Carolina.....	May 23, 1788	7	9
9	New Hampshire.....	June 21, 1788	2	4
10	Virginia.....	June 25, 1788	10	12
11	New York.....	July 26, 1788	37	39
12	North Carolina.....	Nov. 21, 1789	10	12
13	Rhode Island.....	May 29, 1790	2	4
Admitted to the Union				
14	Vermont.....	March 4, 1791	2	4
15	Kentucky.....	June 1, 1792	11	13
16	Tennessee.....	June 1, 1796	10	12
17	Ohio.....	Feb. 19, 1803	21	23
18	Louisiana.....	April 30, 1812	7	9
19	Indiana.....	Dec. 11, 1816	13	15
20	Mississippi.....	Dec. 10, 1817	8	10
21	Illinois.....	Dec. 3, 1818	25	27
22	Alabama.....	Dec. 14, 1819	9	11
23	Maine.....	March 15, 1820	4	6
24	Missouri.....	Aug. 10, 1821	16	18
25	Arkansas.....	June 15, 1836	7	9
26	Michigan.....	Jan. 26, 1837	12	14
27	Florida.....	March 3, 1845	3	5
28	Texas.....	Dec. 29, 1845	16	18
29	Iowa.....	Dec. 28, 1846	11	13
30	Wisconsin.....	May 29, 1848	11	13
31	California.....	Sept. 9, 1850	8	10
32	Minnesota.....	May 11, 1858	9	11
33	Oregon.....	Feb. 14, 1859	2	4
34	Kansas.....	Jan. 29, 1861	8	10
35	West Virginia.....	June 19, 1863	5	7
36	Nevada.....	Oct. 31, 1864	1	3
37	Nebraska.....	March 1, 1867	6	8
38	Colorado.....	Aug. 1, 1876	3	5
39	North Dakota.....	Nov. 2, 1889	2	4
40	South Dakota.....	Nov. 2, 1889	2	4
41	Montana.....	Nov. 8, 1889	1	3
42	Washington.....	Nov. 11, 1889	3	5
43	Idaho.....	July 3, 1890	1	3
44	Wyoming.....	July 10, 1890	1	3
45	Utah.....	Jan. 4, 1896	1	3
46	Oklahoma.....	Nov. 16, 1907	5	7

	Territories	Organized
1	District of Columbia.....	March 3, 1791
2	New Mexico.....	Sept. 9, 1850
3	Arizona.....	Feb. 24, 1863
4	Alaska.....	July 27, 1868
5	Hawaiian Islands.....	June 14, 1900

	Dependencies	Acquired
1	Guam.....	1899
2	Philippine Islands.....	1899
3	Porto Rico.....	1899
4	Tutuila.....	1899
5	Panama Canal Zone.....	1904

EUROPEAN SOVEREIGNS CONTEMPORANEOUS WITH COLONIAL HISTORY

ENGLAND	FRANCE	SPAIN
Henry VII.....1485	Charles VIII.....1483	Ferdinand and Isabella.....1479
Henry VIII.....1509	Louis XII.....1498	Charles I.....1516
Edward VI.....1547	Francis I.....1515	Philip II.....1556
Mary.....1553	Henry II.....1547	
Elizabeth.....1558	Francis II.....1559	Philip III.....1598
James I.....1603	Charles IX.....1560	
	Henry III.....1574	
Charles I.....1625	Henry IV.....1589	Philip IV.....1621
	Louis XIII.....1610	Charles II.....1665
Commonwealth...1649	Louis XIV.....1643	
Charles II.....1660		Philip V.....1700
James II.....1685		Ferdinand VI.....1744
William III and Mary II.....1689		Charles III.....1759
Anne.....1702	Louis XV.....1715	Charles IV...1788-1808
George I.....1714		
George II.....1727	Louis XVI.....1774	
George III...1760-1820	Republic...1793-1804	

* Charles V, Emperor of Germany.

RULERS OF PRINCIPAL FOREIGN COUNTRIES IN 1910

Country	Ruler	Accession
Austria-Hungary	Francis Joseph (Emperor)	1848
Belgium	Albert I (King)	1909
Brazil	Nito Pecanha (President)	1909
Chili	Pedro Montt (President)	1906
China	Hsuantung (Emperor)	1908
Cuba	Jose Miguel Gomez (President)	1909
Denmark	Frederick VIII (King)	1906
France	Armand Fallieres (President)	1906
Germany	William II (Emperor)	1888
Great Britain	George V (King)	1910
Greece	George I (King)	1863
Italy	Victor Emmanuel III (King)	1900
Japan	Mutsu Hito (Mikado)	1867
Mexico	Porfirio Diaz (President)	1884
Netherlands	Wilhelmina (Queen)	1899
Norway	Haakon VII (King)	1905
Persia	Ahmud Mirza (Shah)	1909
Peru	A. B. Legula (President)	1908
Roumania	Charles (King)	1881
Russia	Nicholas II (Czar)	1894
Servia	Peter (King)	1903
Spain	Alfonso XIII (King)	1886
Sweden	Gustaf V (King)	1907
Switzerland	Robert Comtesse (President)	1910
Turkey	Mohammed V.. (Sultan)	1909

DIPLOMATIC AND CONSULAR SERVICE, 1910

AMBASSADORS EXTRAORDINARY AND PLENIPOTENTIARY

SALARY \$17,500

Austria-Hungary	Great Britain	Mexico
Brazil	Italy	Russia
France	Japan	Turkey
Germany		

ENVOYS EXTRAORDINARY AND MINISTERS

PLENIPOTENTIARY

SALARY \$10,000 TO \$12,000

Argentine Republic	Greece	Persia
Belgium	Guatemala	Peru
Bolivia	Hayti	Portugal
Chili	Honduras	Roumania
China	Morocco	Salvador
Colombia	Netherlands	Siam
Costa Rica	Nicaragua	Spain
Cuba	Norway	Sweden
Denmark	Panama	Switzerland
Equador	Paraguay	Venezuela

INDEX

- Acadia, 117
 Acre, 17
 Adams, John, 152, 168, 174, 184
 Adams, John Quincy, 205, 233
 Adams, Samuel, 165, 166, 197
 Adriatic Sea, 14, 21
 Africa, 1, 16, 26, 42, 65
 Alaska, 238, 240
 Albany, 106, 225
 Alden, John, 93-100
Alert, the, 201
 Alfonso XIII, 241
 Algonquins, 5, 96
 Alleghany Mts., 125, 224
 Allegheny River, 157
 Allen, Ethan, 168
 America, 1, 28, 36, 46
 Amherst, Jeffrey, 148
 Amsterdam, 104, 109
 Annapolis, 220
 Anne, Queen, 140
 Arabs, 20, 24, 34, 105
 Arkansas River, 121
 Arnold, Benedict, 197
 Atlantic Ocean, 23
 Australia, 16
 Avila, Don Pedro de, 46, 55, 60
 Azof, the Sea of, 78
 Azores, the, 27, 30
 Aztecs, 7

 Bagdad, 19
 Balboa, 47, 81
 Baltimore, Lord, 129, 138
 Baptists, 101, 166
 Baratha, Monastery of, 28
 Barcelona, 40
 Bayard, Judith, 106
 Beaujeu, Captain, 127
 Beavers, 2, 104, 110
 Belgium, 64
 Berkeley, Lord, 133
 Bienville, Sieur de, 128
 Black Hawk Indians, 214
 Black Plague, the, 131
 Black Prince, the, 23
 Black Sea, 15, 16, 20, 30
 Blackwall, 79
 Blue Ridge Mts., 155, 173
 Boabdil, 34
 Bonaparte, Napoleon, 186
 Boone, Daniel, 211
 Borneo, 10
 Boscawen, Admiral, 148
 Boston, 87, 101, 111, 139, 144
 Boston Neck, 166
 Boston "Tea Party," 164
 Bowery, the, N. Y. City, 114
 "Boxers", the, Chinese, 246
 Braddock, Edward, 146, 157-158
 Bradford, William, 91-103
 Brandywine River, 171
 Brazil, 48
 Brewster, William, 91-98
 Brooklyn, 107

 Brougham, Lord, 227
 Bryan, William J., 240
 Bryant, William Cullen, 231
 Buchanan, James, 217
 Bunker Hill, 167, 205
 Burgoyne, John, 154, 172
 Bute, Lord, 149

 Cabinet, the President's, 222
 Cable, the Atlantic, 233
 Cabot, John, 42, 75
 Cabot, Sebastian, 75, 113, 136
 Cadiz, 70
 Calais, 70, 120
 Calhoun, John C., 208
 Calicut, 19, 43, 70
 California, 68, 116, 210, 216, 235
 Calvert, Lord, 117
 Cambridge, 168
 Canada, 148, 150
 Canals, 14, 16, 229, 249
 Canary Islands, 31, 36, 79
 Canoes, Indian, 3
 Canonics, 98
 Canton, O., 237
 Cape Ann, 85, 200
 Cape Bojador, 27
 Cape Breton Island, 143
 Cape Cod, 85, 93, 101
 Cape Fear River, 79
 Cape Horn, 68
 Cape Non, 25
 Cape of Good Hope, 42, 49
 Cape Tragabigzanda, 85
 Capitals of the United States, 176, 183, 184
 Caracas, 72
 Caravans, 19
 Caribbean Sea, 44, 48
 Carpenters' Hall, 165
 Carteret, Sir George, 133
 Cartier, Jacques, 117
 Carver, John, 93, 94, 96
 Caspian Sea, 17
 Castle Pinckney, 219
 Catholics, 63, 115-129
 Cebu, 49
 Census, the, 248
 Cervera, Admiral, 243
 Ceuta, 24
 Chagres River, 67
 Charles I of England, 130, 141
 Charles II of England, 113, 130, 137
 Charles I of Spain, 48, 50, 55, 59
 Charleston, S. C., 193, 219
 Charlestown, 87, 101
 Chatham, the Earl of, 153-154
 Cherokees, the, 193
 Chesapeake Bay, 79, 83
 Chester, 135
 Chicago, 45
 Chickahominy River, 80, 81
 Chickasaws, 4
 Chimneys, 30, 61
 China, 17, 75, 105, 118, 246
 Choctaws, 4

- Christian Religion, 53, 65, 77, 91
 Church of England, 80, 89, 92, 100, 130
 Cincinnati, 225
 Civil War, 219-222
 Clans, Indian, 3
 Clark, Geo. Rogers, 173
 Clarke, William, 187
 Clay, Henry, 209, 216
Clermont, the, 225
 Columbus, Bartholomew, 29, 32, 42-44
 Columbus, Christopher, 28, 29-45, 245
 Columbus, Diego, 29, 41
 Compass, 23, 82, 118, 120
 Compromise, the Missouri, 216
 Concord, Battle of, 166
 Confederate States, 219, 220, 221
 Congress, Continental, 165, 166-176, 195
 Connecticut, 102
 Connecticut River, 101, 106
 Constantinople, 10, 30, 78
 Constitutional Convention, 175-196
 Constitution, the U. S., 94, 175
 Conti, Fort, 122
 Convention, the Hartford, 202, 208
 Cooper, James Fenimore, 231
 Cork, Ireland, 132
 Cornwallis, Lord Charles, 170, 173
 Cortes, the Spanish, 241
 Cortez, Hernando, 49
 Cortez, Martin, 66
 Corvo, the Island of, 31
 Cotton, 159, 226
 Cotton Gin, 226
 Creeks, the, 4, 188
 Crèvecoeur, Fort, 123
 Cromwell, Oliver, 130, 161
 Cromwell, Richard, 130
 Cuba, 39, 49, 150, 241-249
 Cumberland River, 181
 Curaçoa, 105
 Custis, Martha, 158
 Cuzco, 51, 54

 Dakotahs, 4
 Dartmouth College, 199
 Davis, Jefferson, 210, 221
 Declaration of Independence, 153, 168
 Declaration of Rights, 151, 166
 Delaware, 135, 144
 Delaware Bay, 106
 Delaware River, 133, 135, 170
 Delfts Haven, 93
 Democratic Party, 206, 209, 217
 Deptford, 69
 De Soto, Fernando, 46-60, 80
 Detroit, 173
 Devonshire, Eng., 63
 Dewey, George, 243, 244
 Diaz, Bartholomew, 35, 42
 Dinwiddie, Robert, 150
 District of Columbia, 184
 Doge of Venice, 21
 Don River, 78
 Dorchester, 87, 101
 Douglas, Stephen A., 218
 Dover, 70
 Drake, Sir Francis, 61-73
 Dublin, 132
 Dunmore, Lord, 163
 Duquesne, Fort, 145, 157, 158
 Dutch, the, 76, 89, 93, 102, 104-114, 133, 135
 Duxbury Hall, Eng., 88
 Duxbury, Mass., 101, 102

 Easter Celebration, 112
 East India Company, Dutch, 104
 East India Company, English, 163, 179
 East Indies, 40, 61, 69, 74, 142
 East Jersey, 133
 East River, 111
 Edward III of England, 23
 El Dorado, 48, 50, 217
 Electricity, 231-235
 Elizabeth, Queen, 64-78, 88, 141
 Elm, the Treaty, 129, 136
 Emancipation Proclamation, 221
 Endicott, John, 87
 England, 24, 45, 61, 87, 150
 English Channel, 65
 English Settlements, First, 80, 126
 Episcopalians, 166
 "E Pluribus Unum", 194
 Erie Canal, 229
 Erie, Lake, 122
 Eton College, Eng., 142
 Europe, 1, 15
 Expansion, Territorial, 236-250

 Fairfax, Lord, 155-173
 "Father of Waters", 4
 Federal Hall, N. Y., 176
 Federalists, the, 182
 Ferdinand, King, 33, 40, 44
 Field, Cyrus W., 233
 Five Nations, 1, 3, 11, 107-9, 120, 136, 147
 Flag, the American, 202, 210, 219, 248
 Florida, 55-59, 80, 150, 189
 Fort Duquesne, 145-157, 158
 Fort Niagara, 148
 Fort Orange, 106, 111, 114
 Fort Pinckney, 219
 Fort Pitt, 148
 Fort St. Louis, 125
 Fort Saratoga, 154, 172
 Fort Sumter, 219
 Fort Ticonderoga, 146
 Fort William Henry, 146
 "Fountain of Youth", 55
 Fox, George, 129
 France, 45, 107, 139, 150, 167, 172
 Franciscans, the, 120
 Franklin, Benjamin, 152, 153, 161, 165, 167, 168, 174, 175, 194, 196, 231
 Free Soil Party, 217
 "Free Trade", 206
 French Fleet in Revolutionary War, 172, 173
 Friends, the, 129
 Friesland, 104
Frolic, the, 201
 Frontenac, Count de, 118-124
 Fulton, Robert, 225
 Fur Trade, 106

 Gage, Thomas, 166
 Gama, Vasco da, 28, 43
 Garfield, James A., 239
 Gates, Horatio, 172
 Genoa, 20, 24, 29, 30, 33
 "Gentlemen", 80
 George I, 140
 George II, 143, 147, 149
 George III, 149, 159, 227
 Georgia, 144
 Glass, 61
 Gold, 39, 44, 48, 55, 216, 240
Golden Hind, the, 69
 Gondolas, 14, 15, 19

- Government of the U. S., 175
 Government, Self, 94, 102
 Granada, 34
 Grand Canal, Venice, 14, 15
 Grant, Ulysses S., 221, 222, 235
 Great Wall, the, 17, 18
 Greeley, Horace, 218
 Green Bay, 124
 Greenland, 31
Griffin, the, 122, 123
 Guam, Island, 249
Guerrière, the, 201
 Guinea, 31, 65
 Gulf of Mexico, 56, 121, 126-128
 Gunpowder, 21

 Hamilton, Alexander, 175, 182, 196
 Hancock, John, 166
 Harrison, Benjamin, 160
 Hartford, 101, 111
 Hartford Convention, 202, 208
 Harvard College, 193
 Havana, 150
 Havana Bay, 39, 242
 Hawaiian Islands, 244
 Hawkins, Sir John, 65
 Hawthorne, Nathaniel, 231
 Hay, John, 249
 Hayne, Robert, 206-208
 Hayti, 39, 41, 47
 Hennepin, Father, 120
 Henry VII of England, 42, 75, 141
 Henry VIII of England, 63, 75
 Henry, the Navigator, 1, 23-28, 30
 "Hermitage", the, 190, 194
 Hessians, the, 153, 167, 170
 Hiawatha, 1-13
 Hobomok, 97-102
 Holland, 64, 195
 Holland, Pilgrims in, 91-93
 Holston River, 182
 Holy Land, 77
 Hongkong, China, 243
 Honolulu, 244
 House of Burgesses, 86, 158
 House of Commons, 142, 151, 152, 158, 174
 House of Lords, English, 142, 153
 House of Representatives, 175
 Howe, Admiral Lord, 169
 Howe, Sir William, 169
 Hudson, Henry, 106, 113
 Hudson River, 93, 106, 136, 168
 Hungary, 77
 Huron, Lake, 122
 Hurons, the, 147

 Iagoo, 5
 Iberville, Sieur d', 128
 Idaho, 235
 Illinois, 173, 190
 Illinois River, 123
 Immigration, Am., 204, 215, 229
 Impresment of American Sailors, 200
 Inca, the, 50-54
 Independence Hall, 168
 India, 25, 32, 34
 Indiana, 173, 190
 Indians, 1, 13, 38, 40, 80, 96, 100, 106, 135, 136
 Indian Sea, 19
 Indian Territory, 193
 Internal Improvement, 206, 229
 Invincible Armada, 70

 Ireland, 71, 131, 148
 Iroquois, the, 1-13, 107, 109, 120, 136, 147
 Irving, Washington, 230
 Isabella, Queen, 33, 40, 44
 Isthmus of Panama, 44, 47, 50, 67, 240
 Italians, 24
 Italy, 14, 20, 77

 Jackson, Andrew, 178-194, 206
 Jamaica, 130, 142
 James I, 78, 83, 92, 141
 James II, 137-140
 James, Duke of York, 113, 133, 135, 137
 James River, 79, 80
 Jamestown, 80, 86, 92
 Japan, 16, 18, 20, 105
 Java, 16, 19
Java, the, 201
 Jay, John, 165, 166, 174
 Jefferson, Thomas, 168, 176, 182, 186
 Jesuits, 115
 John, King of Portugal, 23, 32
 "Join or Die", 151
 Joliet, Louis, 121
Joly, the, 127
 Jones, John Paul, 172
Judith, the, 65

 Kansas, 217
 Kaskaskia, 173
 Kent, James, 231
 Kentucky, 5, 182
 Key, Francis Scott, 202
 Khan, the Great, 17, 19, 36, 39
 Kieft, William, 108
 King's Mountain, 173
 Kingston, 120
 Klondike River, 240
 Knoxville, Tenn., 182
 Kobi, Desert of, 17

 Ladrone Islands, 48, 245, 249
 Lafayette, Marquis de, 171, 205, 229
 Lagos, 27
 Lake Champlain, 146
 Lake George, 146
 Lake Ontario, 107
 Lancashire, Eng., 88
 Lapland, 75
 La Salle, Cavelier de, 115-128, 136
 Las Flores, 31
 Lawrence, James, 200
Lawrence, the, 200
 Lee, Richard Henry, 160
 Lee, Robert E., 221
 Leif the Lucky, 31
 Leon, Ponce de, 55
 Lewis, Meriwether, 187
 Lexington, Battle of, 166
 Leyden, 90
 "Lilies of France", 125
 Lima, 55, 67
 Lincoln, Abraham, 211-223
 Lincoln's Inn, 131, 142
 Lisbon, 23, 70
 Literature, American, 230, 231
 Livingston, Robert R., 168, 186
 Livingston, William, 165
 London, 65, 78, 131
 London Company, 79, 83
 Longfellow, Henry W., 12, 100
 Long House, Indian, 3
 Long Island, 107

- "Lord Millions", 20
 Louis XIV of France, 119, 120, 131, 138
 Louis XVI, 171
 Louisburg, 143
 Louisiana, 115-128, 185
 Luzon, 243
 Lynn, Eng., 74

Macedonian, the, 201
 McKinley Tariff, 240
 McKinley, William, 236-250
 Madeira Islands, 27
 Madison, James, 175, 188, 196
 Madras, India, 142, 143
 Magellan, 48
 Maine, 96, 144
Maine, the, 242
 Maize, 7, 11
 Malabar, 19
 Mandeville, Sir John, 31
 Manhattan Island, 107
 Manila, 150, 243
 Manila Bay, 243
 Manufactures, American, 204
 Maria Christina, Queen, 241
 Marietta, Ohio, 225
 Mariner's Compass, 23
 Marquette, Father, 121
 Marseilles, 77
 Marshall, John, 231
 Mary II, Queen of England, 138
 Maryland, 129, 144
 Mason and Dixon's Line, 138, 206
 Massachusetts, 101, 102, 144
 Massasoit, 96, 101
 Matagorda Bay, 127
 Mavilla (Mobile), 58
 Maximilian, Emperor, in Mexico, 238
Mayflower, the, 87
 Mediterranean Sea, 16, 20, 23
 Memphis, 58
 Merrymount, 100
 Mexico, 44, 45, 49, 216, 238
 Miami, Fort, 123
 Michigan, 173
 Miles, Nelson A., 244
 Minnesota, 173
 Mississippi River, 50, 118, 136
 Missouri River, 60
 Mobilian Indians, 4
 Mohawk Indians, 11
 Mohawk River, 107
 Monongahela River, 157
 Monroe Doctrine, 203, 238
 Monroe, James, 186, 190, 203
 Montana, 235
 Montcalm, Marquis de, 146
 Montezuma, 7, 49
 Montreal, 117
 Moors, 24, 34, 46
 Morristown, N. J., 171
 Morse, S. F. B., 224-235
 Mount Hope, 96
 Mount Vernon, 155, 156, 175, 177
 Mullens, Priscilla, 98
 Muskingum River, 225

 Napoleon Bonaparte, 186
 Napoleon III, 238
 Narragansetts, the, 98
 Nashville, Tenn., 181, 190
 Natchez, 187
 Nationalists, the, 206-209

 National Pike Road, 229
 Navy, the U. S., 200, 220
 Negroes, 27, 65, 215, 221, 239
 Netherlands, the, 64, 76, 89, 102, 104-114
 Nevada, 235
 New Amsterdam, 106-114
 Newcastle, 135
 New England, 85, 93-103, 206
 Newfoundland, 56
 New France, 117
 New Hampshire, 195
 New Haven, 101, 102
 New Jersey, 133, 144
 New Mexico, 216
 New Netherlands, 106-114
 New Orleans, 128, 150, 186-189
 New Orleans, Battle of, 188
 Newport, Christopher, 79, 81, 83
 New Year Celebration, 112
 New York, 114, 135, 138, 144
 New York City, 144, 168
 Niagara Falls, 115, 122
 Niagara, Fort, 148
Niña, the, 36, 40, 45
 Nokomis, 2-11
 Normandy, 115
 North America, 16
 North Carolina, 144
 North, Lord, 154
 North Sea, 74, 90
 North Virginia, 79, 85, 94-103
 Northwest Territory, 187, 224
 Nottinghamshire, 92
 Nova Scotia, 117
 Nullification Doctrine, 207, 208

 Ohio, 173, 187
 Ohio Company, 145, 156
 Ohio River, 119, 145, 156
 Ohio Valley, 157
 Oneidas, 11
 Onondagas, 11
 Ontario, Lake, 119, 120
 Oporto, Portugal, 24
 Oregon, 236
 Orinoco River, 43
 Oxford University, England, 131, 142

 Pacific Ocean, 16, 47, 48, 118, 248
 Pakenham, Sir Edward, 188
 Palestine, 17
 Palma, Estrada, 248
 Palos, 45
 Panama Canal, 44, 249
 Panama, Isthmus of, 44, 47, 50, 67
 Panama Republic, 249
 Paris, Treaty of (1783), 174
 Parkman, Francis, 128
 Parliament, the English, 137, 142, 151-154, 172
 Patagonia, 48
 Patroons, 107
 Pedro the Traveler, 26
 Pekin, 17, 36, 247
 Pendleton, Edmund, 160
 Penn, Admiral Sir William, 130-133
 Penn, William, 129-140
 Pennsylvania, 134-140, 144
 Penobscot River, 85
 Peoria, Ill., 123
 Perry, Oliver H., 200
 Persia, 22, 105
 Peru, 44, 50-55, 67

- Philadelphia, 135, 164, 175, 183
 Philip I of Spain, 64, 67, 76, 105
 Philippa, Queen, 23
 Philippine Islands, 49, 68, 149-50, 243-250
 Pilgrims, 87, 91
 Pinckney, Castle, 219
Pinta, the, 36, 40, 45
 Pitt, Fort, 145, 148, 157, 158
 Pitt, William, 141-154
 Pittsburg, 204
 Pizarro, Francisco, 50-55
 Plain, or Field, of Abraham, 148
 Plymouth Company, 79, 85
 Plymouth, England, 63, 65, 79
 Plymouth, Mass., 95, 112
 Pocahontas, 82, 84, 86
 Poe, Edgar Allan, 231
 Point St. Vincent, 26, 30
 Ponce de Leon, 55
 Porto Rico, 55, 244-249
 Port Royal, 117
 Portugal, 23-28, 45, 61, 69, 105
 Potomac River, 83, 155
 Powhatan, 82, 83
 Presbyterians, 166
 President of U. S., 175
 Protestants, 63
 Providence, R. I., 101
 Puritans, 87, 88-103, 107, 129

 Quakers, 120-140
 Quebec, 117, 121, 148
 Quebec Bill, 164

 Railroads, 220, 234
 Raleigh, Sir Walter, 75, 79, 89
 Randolph, Peyton, 160
 Red River, 59
 Representatives, House of, 175
 Republican, Democratic, Party, 206
 Republican, Nationalist, Party, 206
 Republican Party, Original, 188
 Republican Party (1850), 217
 Republican, Whig, Party, 209
 Revolution, the American, 162-175
 Revolution, the Cuban, 241-245, 248
 Rhode Island, 101, 144, 175
 Rialto, the, 16, 19
 Richmond, Va., 221
 Robinson, John, 91, 93
 Rocky Mountains, 4
 Rolfe, John, 86
 Roosevelt, Theodore, 247-250
 "Roundheads", 129
 Roxbury, Mass., 87, 101
 Russia, 239
 Rutledge, Edward, 165
 Rutledge, John, 165

 St. Augustine, Fla., 56
 St. Joseph River (Mich.), 123
 St. Lawrence River, 117
 St. Louis, 187
 St. Mark's Square (Venice), 20
 St. Ouen's Cathedral (Rouen), 117
 St. Sulpice (Canada), 118
 Salamanca, Council of, 33
 Salem, Mass., 101
 Samoset, 66
 Sampson, William T., 243
 Sangamon River, 213
 San Juan, 244
 San Lucar, 56

 San Salvador, 38
Santa Maria, 35, 36, 39, 45
 Santiago de Cuba, 50, 243
 Santo Domingo, 43
 Saratoga, Battle of, 172
 Savannah, Ga., 180
 Saybrook, 101
 Scalp-locks, 5, 10
 Schley, Winfield S., 243, 244
 Schuylkill River, 135
 Scotland, 148
 Scrooby, 92
 "Sea to Sea" Charters, 122
 Secession of States, 219, 220
 Seine River, 115
 Seminoles, 4
 Senate, U. S., 175
 Sendall, Sir Thomas, 74
 Senecas, 11
 Separatists, 91
 Seville, 44, 55
 Seward, William H., 238
 Shafter, William R., 244
 Shenandoah Valley, 155
 Sheridan, Philip, 238
 Sherman, Roger, 168, 175
 Sigismund, Prince, 78
 Sign Writing, Indian, 12
 Slavery Question, 65, 215-221
 Smith, John, 74-87, 93, 94
 Soto, Fernando de, 46-60
 South, the, U. S., 138
 Southampton, Eng., 93
 South Carolina, 144
 "South Sea", 48, 81
 South Virginia, 79
 Spain, 24, 33, 46, 48, 61, 89, 105, 130
 Spanish Main, 72
Spredwell, the, 93
 Spices, 15, 20, 25, 118
 Spinning Wheels, 95, 99
 Squantum, 97
 Stamp Tax, 151, 159-161
 Standish Hall, 88
 Standish, Miles, 88-103, 112
 Standish, Rose, 91, 95
 Stanford, Leland, 235
 "Star Spangled Banner", 202
 Staten Island, 171
 Steamboats, 225, 226
 Stocks, the, 89, 132
 Story, Joseph, 231
 Strait of Gibraltar, 24
 Stuyvesant, Peter, 104-114
 Submarine Cable, 233
 Sumatra, 19
 Sumter, Fort, 219
 Superior, Lake, 122
 Supreme Court, 175

 Tampa Bay, 56
 Tariff, the Protective, 191-193, 205, 240
 Tavistock, 63
 Tea Tax, 162-164, 179
 Telegraph, the, 231-235
 Tennessee, 182
 Tennessee River, 4
 Texas, 127, 216
 Thames River, Canada, 201
 Thames River, England, 79, 86
 Thibet, 22
 Ticonderoga, Fort, 146, 168
 Tobacco, 65, 113

- Toleration Act, 137, 141
 Tontii, Chevalier de, 122-128
 Tories, 163, 173, 179, 195
 Toscanelli, 32
 Totems, Indian, 4
 Tower of London, 132, 133
 Trade, 20, 24, 105, 113, 117, 137, 144
 Tragabigzanda, Cape, 85
 Treaties: Paris (1783), 174; Spanish American, 245
 Trenton, N. J., 170
 Trinity River, 127
 Turkeys, 75
 Turnpike Road, National, 229

 Union, Federal, the, 213
 Union Pacific Railroad, 234
 United Colonies of America, 94, 102, 164-176
 United Colonies of New England, 101, 102
 United Netherlands, 105

 Valladolid, Spain, 44, 55
 Valley Forge, 171
 Van Rensselaer, Killian, 108, 111
 Venice, 14, 24, 29, 33
 Vera Cruz, 40
 Vere, Sir Thomas, 90
 Vermont, 168
 Versailles, 126
 Vice-President of the U. S., 175
 Victoria, Queen, 234
 Vincennes, Fort, 173
 Virginia, 79-87
 Virginia Resolutions, 161

 Wales, Europe, 134
 Wampanoags, the, 96
 Wampum, 136
 War, Moorish, 34, 35
 Warren, Commodore, 143
 Wars: American, 111-114, 143, 145-150; American Revolution, 166, 174; 1812, 200-202, 227; Civil War, 219-222; Mexican War, 216; Spanish, 242-245
 Wars, Chinese, 18, 246, 247
 Wars, Dutch, 76, 80, 102, 105, 111-14
 Wars, English, 60-70, 102, 143, 166-174
 Wars, French, 143, 145-150
 Wars, Indian, 5-0, 49, 54, 57, 99, 188, 214
 Wars, Japanese, 18
 Wars, Portuguese, 24, 69
 Wars, Turkish, 30, 34, 35, 77
 Wars, Venetian, 21, 29
 Washington, D. C., 184
 Washington, George, 148, 155-177
 Washington, Lawrence, 155-156
 Webster, Daniel, 195-210
 West, Benjamin, 227
 West Indian Company, the Dutch, 106-114
 West Indies, 45, 79, 105, 130
 West Jersey, 133
 West Point, 197, 220
 Weymouth, 90
 Whigs, 163, 170, 200
 Whitehall, 131
 White House, the, 184
 White Oak Swamp, 81
 Whitney, Eli, 226
 Whittier, John G., 231
 William of Orange, 138-140
 Williamsburg, Va., 156, 158
 Williams, Roger, 101
 Willoughby, 74
 Willoughby, Sir Hugh, 75
 Windward Islands, 41
 Winslow, Edward, 91-103
 Winthrop, John, 87
 Wisconsin, 173
 Witchcraft, 114
 Wolfe, James, 148
 World's Fair, Chicago, 45

 Yale College, 226
 York, the Duke of, 113, 133, 135
 Yorktown, 173
 Yukon River, 241

To avoid fine, this book should be returned on
or before the date last stamped below

SON-9.40

APR 3 1950

610009

Burton, Alma H.
Builders of our nation.

DATE

NAME

DATE

APR. 3 - 1950

LIBRARY. SCHOOL OF EDUCATION. STANFORD

610009

